# 2004 Chevrolet Monte Carlo Owner Manual


**Seats and Restraint Systems** ..... 1-1
Front Seats ..... 1-2
Rear Seats ..... 1-8
Safety Belts ..... 1-10
Child Restraints ..... 1-29
Air Bag Systems ..... 1-48
Restraint System Check ..... 1-57

**Features and Controls** ..... 2-1
Keys ..... 2-2
Doors and Locks ..... 2-8
Windows ..... 2-13
Theft-Deterrent Systems ..... 2-15
Starting and Operating Your Vehicle ..... 2-17
Mirrors ..... 2-31
OnStar® System ..... 2-34
HomeLink® Transmitter ..... 2-36
Storage Areas ..... 2-40
Sunroof ..... 2-41
Vehicle Personalization ..... 2-42

**Instrument Panel** ..... 3-1
Instrument Panel Overview ..... 3-4
Climate Controls ..... 3-21
Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators ..... 3-28
Message Center ..... 3-44
Driver Information Center (DIC) ..... 3-52
Trip Computer ..... 3-54
Audio System(s) ..... 3-55

**Driving Your Vehicle** ..... 4-1
Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle ..... 4-2
Towing ..... 4-31

**Service and Appearance Care** ..... 5-1
Service ..... 5-3
Fuel ..... 5-4
Checking Things Under the Hood ..... 5-10
Headlamp Aiming ..... 5-60
Bulb Replacement ..... 5-60
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement ..... 5-64
Tires ..... 5-65
Appearance Care ..... 5-94
Vehicle Identification ..... 5-102
Electrical System ..... 5-103
Capacities and Specifications ..... 5-110

**Maintenance Schedule** ..... 6-1
Maintenance Schedule ..... 6-2

**Customer Assistance and Information** ..... 7-1
Customer Assistance and Information ..... 7-2
Reporting Safety Defects ..... 7-12

**Index** ..... 1


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, CHEVROLET, the CHEVROLET Emblem and the name MONTE CARLO are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. We reserve the right to make changes after that time without further notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Chevrolet Motor Division whenever it appears in this manual.

Please keep this manual in your vehicle, so it will be there if you ever need it when you’re on the road. If you sell the vehicle, please leave this manual in it so the new owner can use it.

## Canadian Owners

You can obtain a French copy of this manual from your dealer or from:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

## How to Use This Manual

Many people read their owner’s manual from beginning to end when they first receive their new vehicle. If you do this, it will help you learn about the features and controls for your vehicle. In this manual, you will find that pictures and words work together to explain things.

## Index

A good place to look for what you need is the Index in back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual, and the page number where you will find it.

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 10335960 A First Edition

©Copyright General Motors Corporation 06/18/03
All Rights Reserved



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

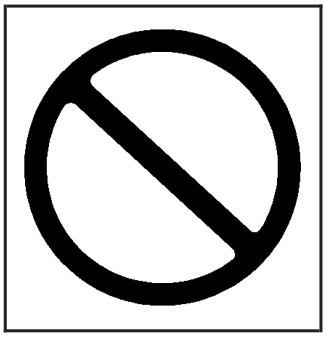
## Safety Warnings and Symbols

You will find a number of safety cautions in this book. We use a box and the word CAUTION to tell you about things that could hurt you if you were to ignore the warning.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.**

In the caution area, we tell you what the hazard is. Then we tell you what to do to help avoid or reduce the hazard. Please read these cautions. If you don't, you or others could be hurt.



You will also find a circle with a slash through it in this book. This safety symbol means "Don't," "Don't do this" or "Don't let this happen."



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Vehicle Damage Warnings

Also, in this book you will find these notices:

***Notice:*** **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

A notice will tell you about something that can damage your vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by your warranty, and it could be costly. But the notice will tell you what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

You'll also see warning labels on your vehicle. They use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.

## Vehicle Symbols

Your vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols, used on your vehicle, are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage or indicator.

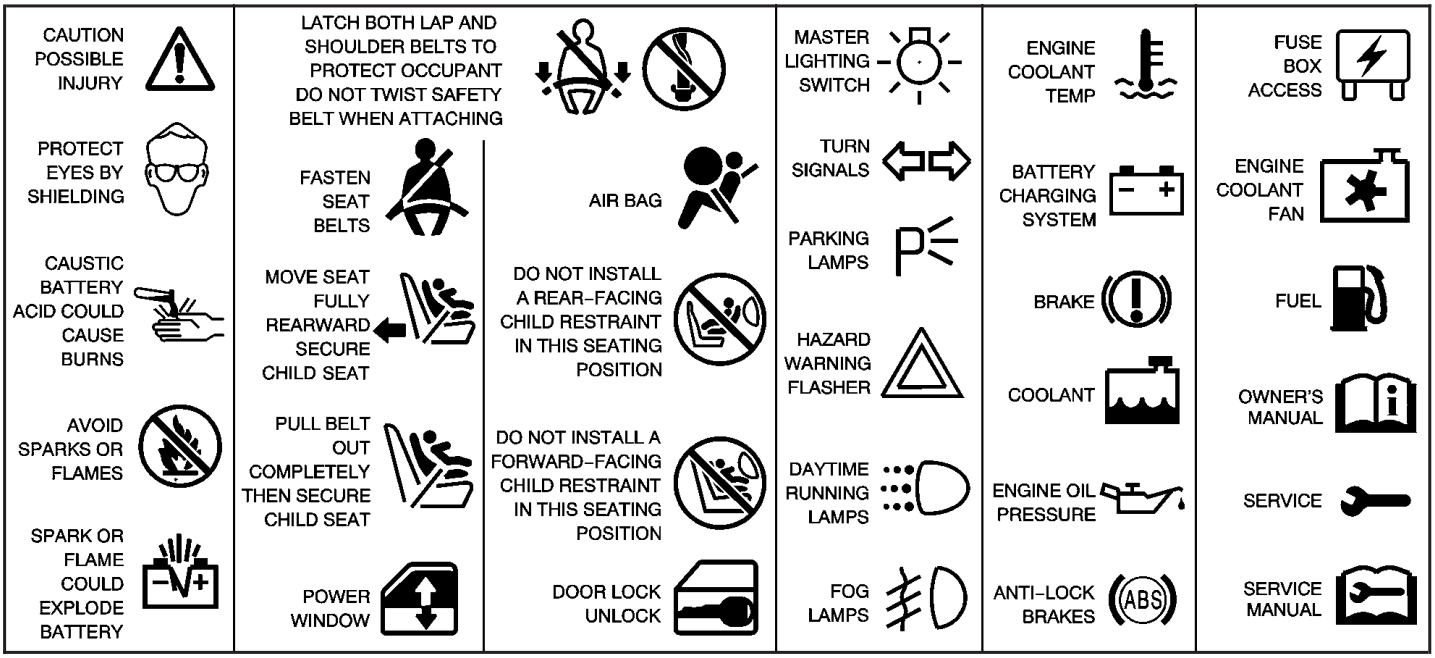
If you need help figuring out a specific name of a component, gage or indicator, reference the following topics:

- Seats and Restraint Systems in Section 1
- Features and Controls in Section 2
- Instrument Panel Overview in Section 3
- Climate Controls in Section 3
- Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators in Section 3
- Audio System(s) in Section 3
- Engine Compartment Overview in Section 5



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

These are some examples of vehicle symbols you may find on your vehicle:






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ✍ NOTES



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems


**Front Seats** .....1-2
Manual Seats .....1-2
Six-Way Power Seats .....1-3
Manual Lumbar .....1-3
Heated Seats .....1-4
Reclining Seatbacks .....1-4
Head Restraints .....1-6
Seatback Latches .....1-6
Easy Entry Seat .....1-7

**Rear Seats** .....1-8
Split Folding Rear Seat .....1-8

**Safety Belts** .....1-10
Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone .....1-10
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts .....1-15
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly .....1-15
Driver Position .....1-16
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....1-22
Right Front Passenger Position .....1-23
Rear Seat Passengers .....1-23
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults .....1-26
Safety Belt Extender .....1-28

**Child Restraints** .....1-29
Older Children .....1-29
Infants and Young Children .....1-31
Child Restraint Systems .....1-35
Where to Put the Restraint .....1-38
Top Strap .....1-38
Top Strap Anchor Location .....1-40
Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) .....1-40
Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System (Rear) .....1-42
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position .....1-43
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position .....1-45

**Air Bag Systems** .....1-48
Where Are the Air Bags? .....1-51
When Should an Air Bag Inflate? .....1-53
What Makes an Air Bag Inflate? .....1-54
How Does an Air Bag Restrain? .....1-54
What Will You See After an Air Bag Inflates? ...1-55
Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle .....1-56

**Restraint System Check** .....1-57
Checking Your Restraint Systems .....1-57
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash .....1-58



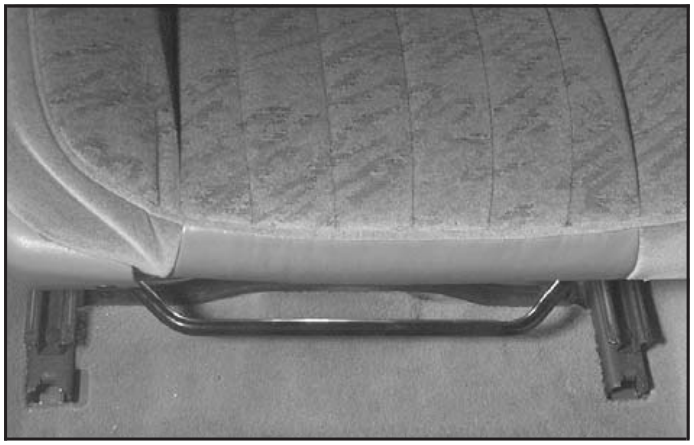

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Front Seats

## Manual Seats

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you don't want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.**



If your vehicle has manual seats, lift the bar located under the front of the seat to unlock it. Slide the seat to where you want it and release the bar. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure the seat is locked in place.



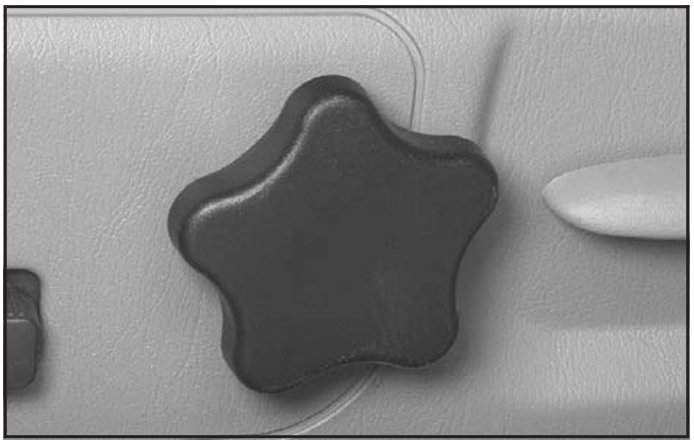
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Six-Way Power Seats

If your vehicle has this feature, the control is located on the outboard side of the front seats toward the front of the seat cushion. To adjust the seat do any of the following:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control to the front or the rear.
- Raise or lower the seat by sliding the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion by sliding the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion by sliding the rear of the control up or down.

## Manual Lumbar



If your vehicle has this feature, the knob is located on the outboard side of the driver's seat. Turn the knob toward the front of the vehicle to increase lumbar support. Turn the knob toward the rear of the vehicle to decrease lumbar support.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

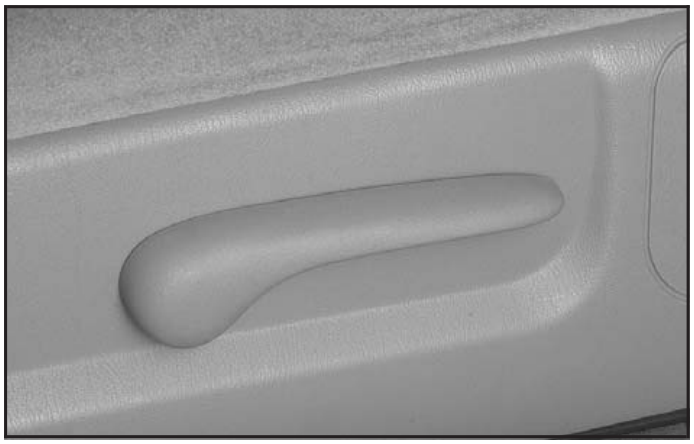
## Heated Seats

If your vehicle has this option, the switches that control seat temperature are located on the center console.

There are two settings, LO and HI.

Press LO to warm the seat to a lower temperature. Press HI to warm the seat to a higher temperature. To turn this feature off, move the switch to the center position.

## Reclining Seatbacks



Lift the lever to release the seatback, then move the seatback to where you want it. Release the lever to lock the seatback in place. Pull up on the lever without pushing on the seatback and the seatback will move forward.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

But don't have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts can't do their job when you're reclined like this.**

**The shoulder belt can't do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.**

**The lap belt can't do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.**

**For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Head Restraints

Adjust your head restraint so that the top of the restraint is closest to the top of your head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

## Seatback Latches

There is a latch located on the lower back of the front seat that enables the front seatback to fold forward.

This allows more room for entry and exit of rear seat passengers.

To fold the locked seatback forward, push the seatback toward the rear and lift the latch. The seatback will fold forward. The latch must be down for the seat to work properly.

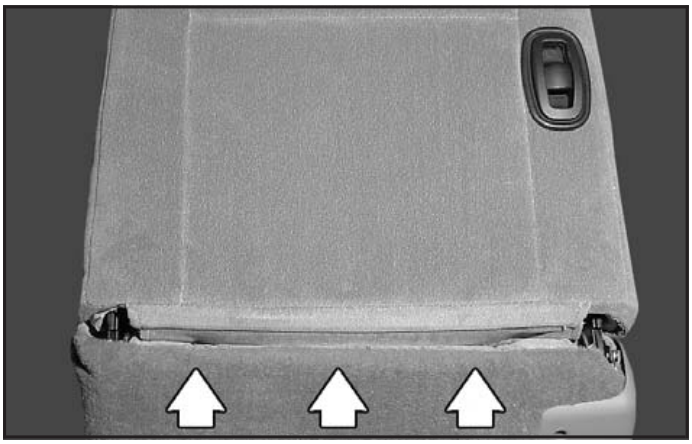


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

## Easy Entry Seat



The right front passenger seat is designed to make it easy to get into and out of the rear seat.

1. Lift the latch on the back of the right front seat and tilt the seatback forward. The seat can be pushed and slid forward to allow someone to get into or out of the rear seat area.
2. Return the seatback upright to lock it. Slide the seat fully rearward to lock it into its original position.
3. The front passenger must try to slide the entire seat back and forth to make sure the seat is locked into place.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the easy entry right front seat isn't locked, it can move. In a sudden stop or crash, the person sitting there could be injured. After you've used it, be sure to push rearward on an easy entry seat to be sure it is locked.**



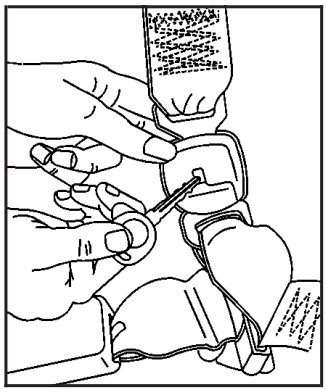
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Rear Seats

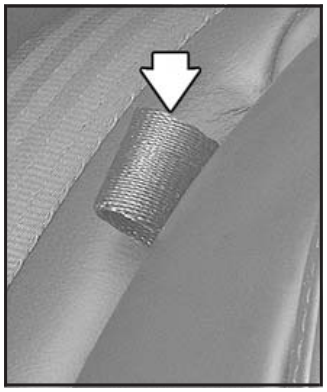
## Split Folding Rear Seat

You can fold either side or both sides of the seatback down for more cargo space. Make sure the front seat isn't reclined. If it is, the rear seatback may not fold down all the way.

To lower the rear seatback, follow these steps:



1. If your vehicle is equipped with this feature, remove the rear center lap-shoulder belt latch by using a pointed object to press the release button.



2. Pull forward on the seatback tab located on the outboard side of the back seat cushion to fold the seatback down.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This will allow you direct access to the trunk.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

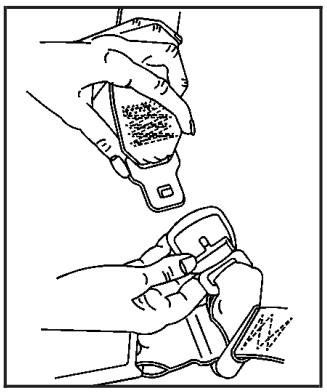
**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted won't provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.**

To raise the rear seatback, follow these steps:

1. Raise the seatback up and make sure it latches. Push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked in position.



2. Reconnect the center safety belt latch plate to the buckle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Make sure the safety belt label is pointing to the release button, and that both are facing the front of the vehicle. Make sure the belt is not twisted. Push and pull on the latch plate to be sure it is secure.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

When the seat is not in use, the seatback should be kept in the upright locked position.

# Safety Belts

## Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Don't let anyone ride where he or she can't wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you're not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it. You can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.**

Your vehicle has a light that comes on as a reminder to buckle up. See *Safety Belt Reminder Light on page 3-32*.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law says to wear safety belts. Here's why: *They work*.

You never know if you'll be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you don't know if it will be a bad one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person wouldn't survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

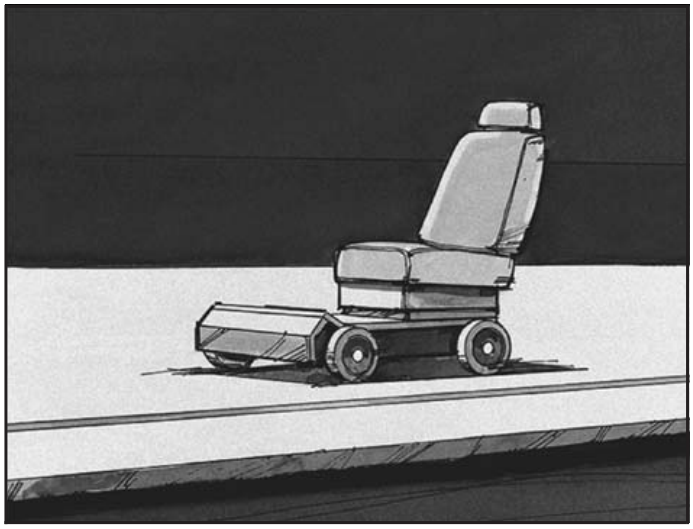
After more than 30 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!



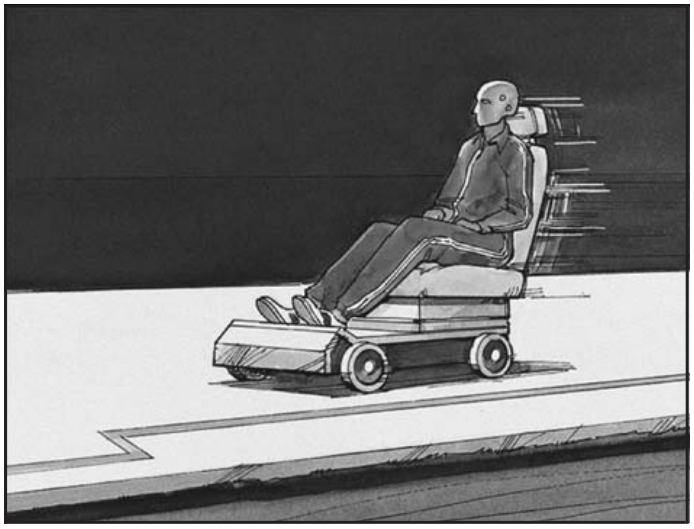
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Why Safety Belts Work

When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



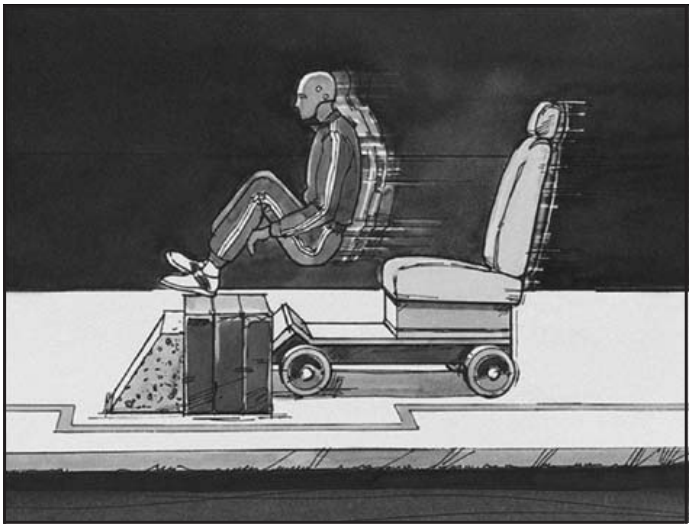
Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it's just a seat on wheels.



Put someone on it.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

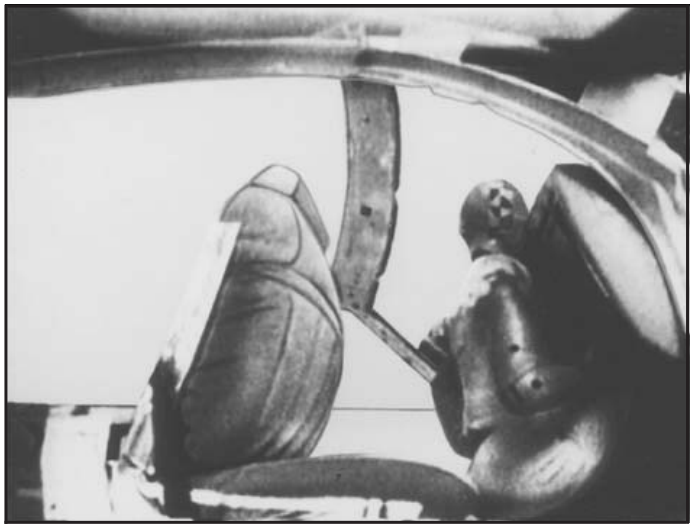


Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider doesn't stop.

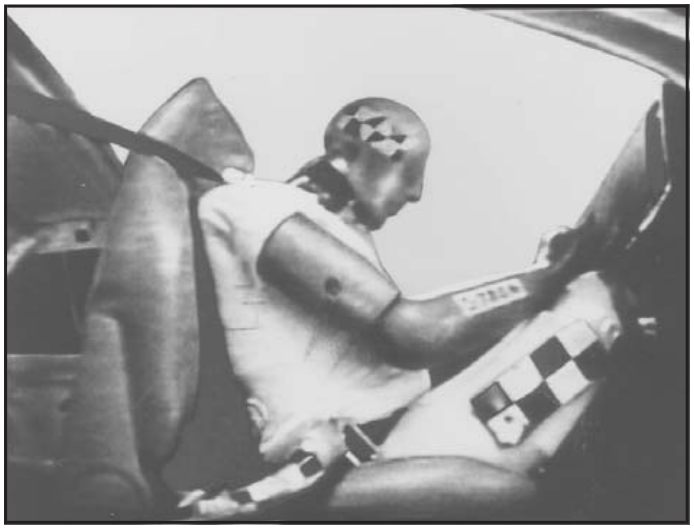
The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



or the instrument panel...



or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That's why safety belts make such good sense.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

**Q: Won't I be trapped in the vehicle after an accident if I'm wearing a safety belt?**

**A:** You *could* be – whether you're wearing a safety belt or not. But you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you're upside down. And your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

**Q: If my vehicle has air bags, why should I have to wear safety belts?**

**A:** Air bags are in many vehicles today and will be in most of them in the future. But they are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts – not instead of them. Every air bag system ever offered for sale has required the use of safety belts. Even if you're in a vehicle that has air bags, you still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That's true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

**Q: If I'm a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?**

**A:** You may be an excellent driver, but if you're in an accident – even one that isn't your fault – you and your passengers can be hurt. Being a good driver doesn't protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

## How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This part is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-29* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-31*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

First, you'll want to know which restraint systems your vehicle has.

We'll start with the driver position.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Driver Position

This part describes the driver's restraint system.

### Lap-Shoulder Belt

The driver has a lap-shoulder belt. Here's how to wear it properly.

1. Close and lock the door.
2. Adjust the seat so you can sit up straight. To see how, see "Seats" in the Index.

3. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Don't let it get twisted.

   The shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

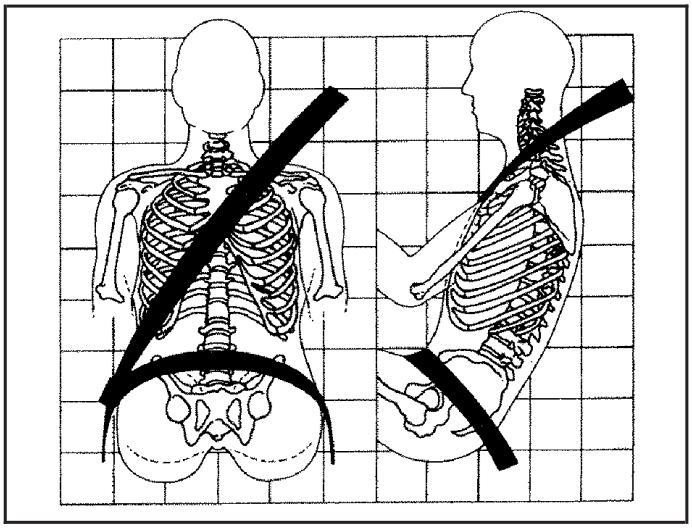
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt isn't long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-28*.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. To make the lap part tight, pull down on the buckle end of the belt as you pull up on the shoulder belt.



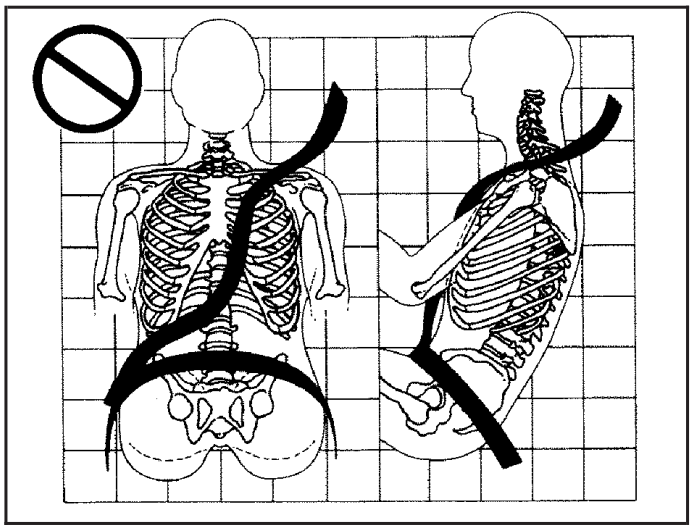
The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you'd be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there's a sudden stop or a crash, or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Q: What's wrong with this?**



**A:** The shoulder belt is too loose. It won't give nearly as much protection this way.

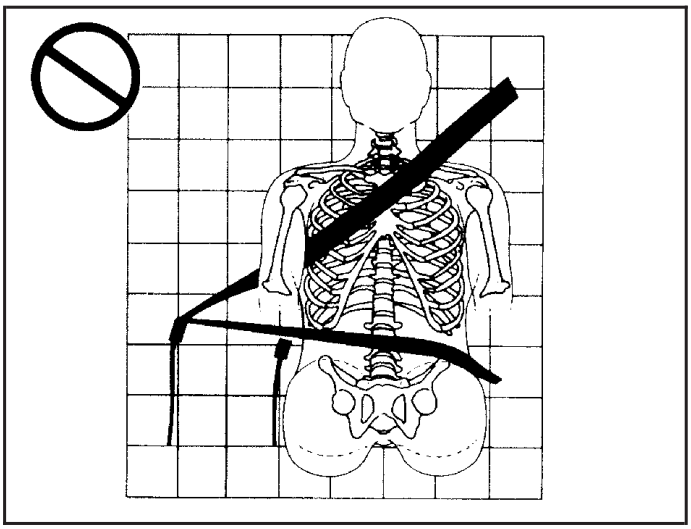
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Q: What's wrong with this?**



**A:** The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

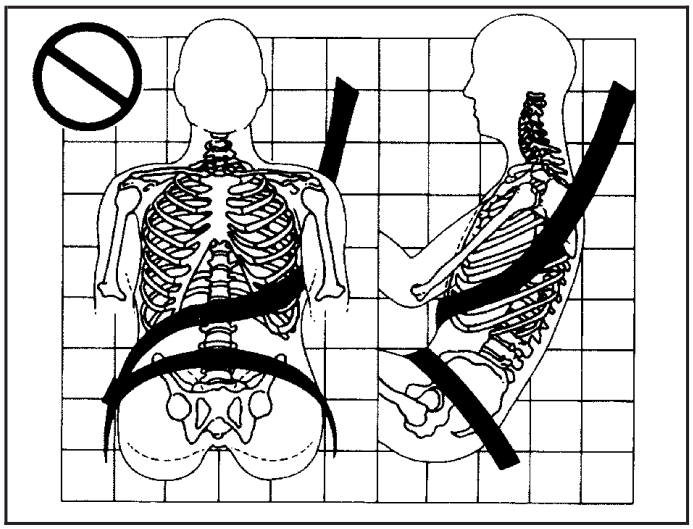
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Q: What's wrong with this?**



**A:** The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

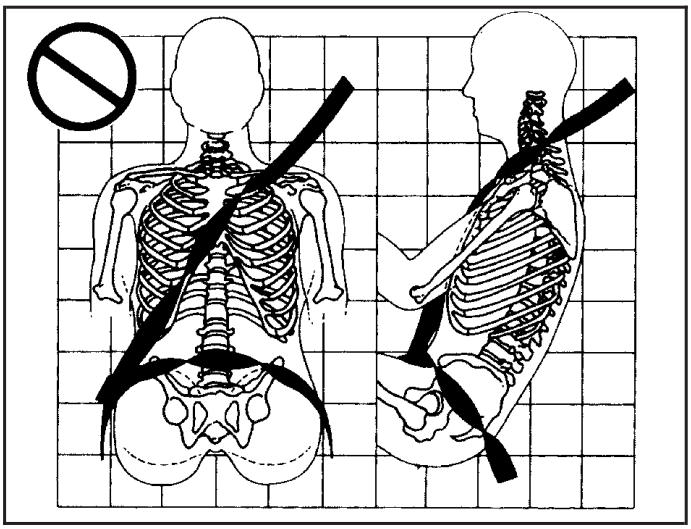
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which aren't as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Q: What's wrong with this?**



**A:** The belt is twisted across the body.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you wouldn't have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.**



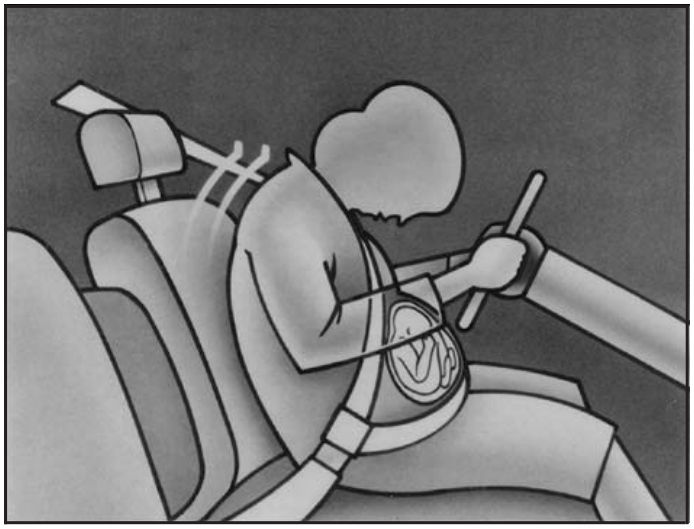
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way.

Before you close the door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

## Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they don't wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it's more likely that the fetus won't be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

## Right Front Passenger Position

To learn how to wear the right front passenger's safety belt properly, see *Driver Position on page 1-16*.

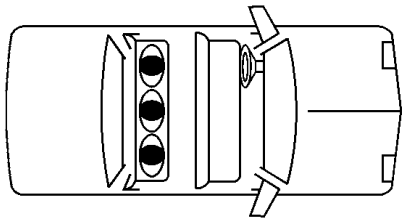
The right front passenger's safety belt works the same way as the driver's safety belt – except for one thing. If you ever pull the shoulder portion of the belt out all the way, you will engage the child restraint locking feature. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

## Rear Seat Passengers

It's very important for rear seat passengers to buckle up! Accident statistics show that unbelted people in the rear seat are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Rear passengers who aren't safety belted can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

## Rear Seat Passenger Positions





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Lap-Shoulder Belt

All rear seating positions have lap-shoulder belts. Here's how to wear one properly.

1. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Don't let it get twisted.

   The shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

2. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

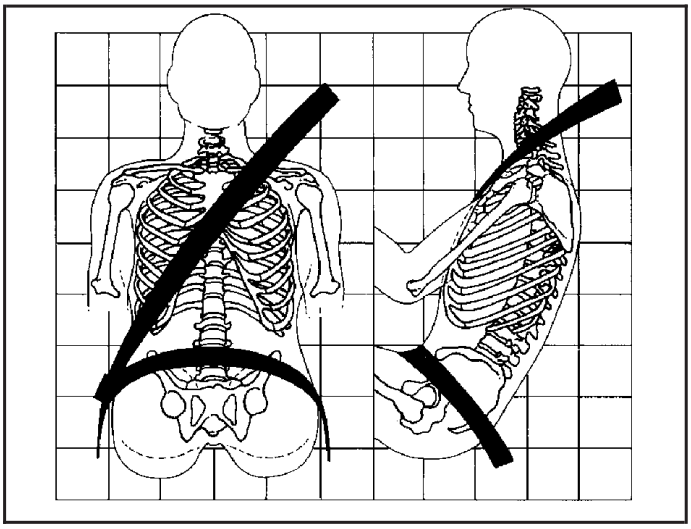
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   When the shoulder belt is pulled out all the way, it will lock. If it does, let it go back all the way and start again. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-28*. Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

3. To make the lap part tight, pull down on the buckle end of the belt as you pull up on the shoulder part.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you'd be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there's a sudden stop or a crash, or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.**

To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle.

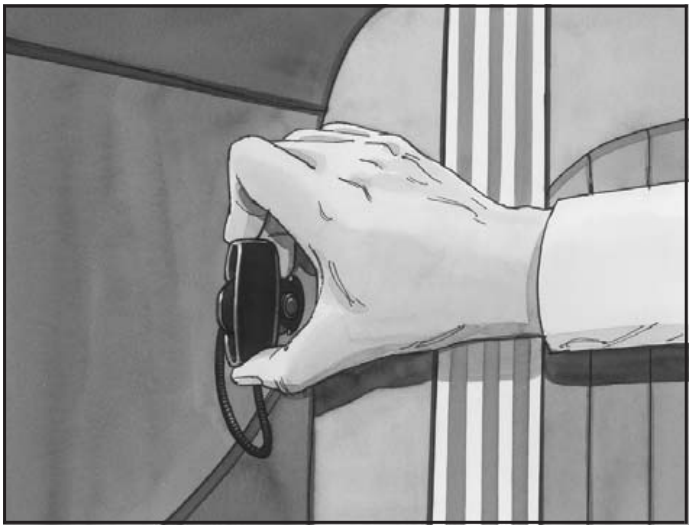


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults

Rear shoulder belt comfort guides will provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for small adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide better positions the belt away from the neck and head.

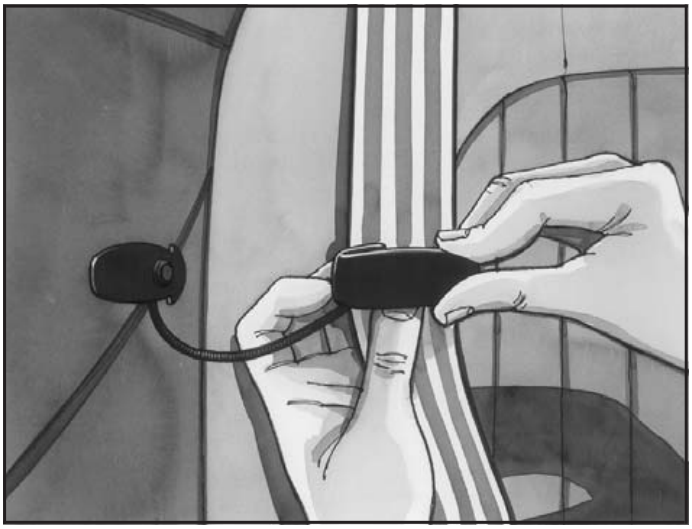
There is one guide for each outside passenger position in the rear seat. To provide added safety belt comfort for children who have outgrown child restraints and booster seats and for smaller adults, the comfort guides may be installed on the shoulder belts. Here's how to install a comfort guide and use the safety belt:



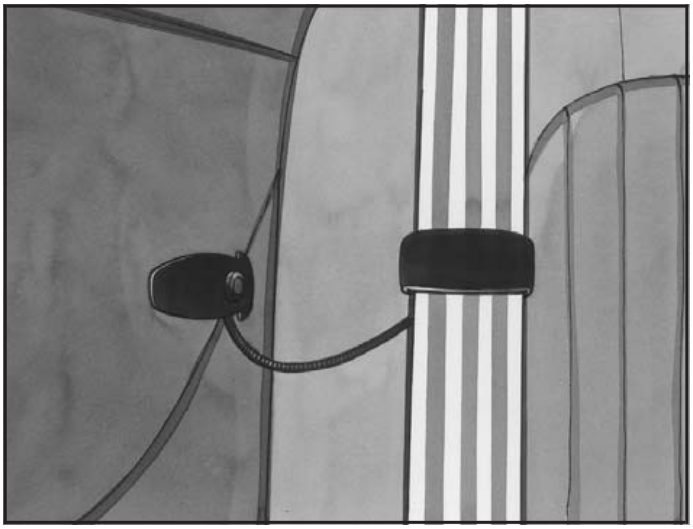
1. Pull the elastic cord out from between the edge of the seatback and the interior body to remove the guide from its storage clip.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Slide the guide under and past the belt. The elastic cord must be under the belt. Then, place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Buckle, position and release the safety belt as described in *Rear Seat Passengers on page 1-23*. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guides, squeeze the belt edges together so that you can take them out of the guides. Pull the guide upward to expose its storage clip, and then slide the guide onto the clip. Turn the guide and clip inward and in between the seatback and interior body, leaving only the loop of elastic cord exposed.

## Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt isn't long enough to fasten, your dealer will order you an extender. It's free. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. The extender will be just for you, and just for the seat in your vehicle that you choose. Don't let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. To wear it, just attach it to the regular safety belt.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Child Restraints

## Older Children

Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

**Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?**

**A:** If possible, an older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt can't properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.**

**Q: What if a child is wearing a lap-shoulder belt, but the child is so small that the shoulder belt is very close to the child's face or neck?**

**A:** If the child is sitting in a seat next to a window, move the child toward the center of the vehicle. If the child is sitting in the center rear seat passenger position, move the child toward the safety belt buckle. In either case, be sure that the shoulder belt still is on the child's shoulder, so that in a crash the child's upper body would have the restraint that belts provide. If the child is sitting in a rear seat outside position, see *Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults on page 1-26*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is behind the child. If the child wears the belt in this way, in a crash the child might slide under the belt. The belt's force would then be applied right on the child's abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries.**

Wherever the child sits, the lap portion of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the child's thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash.

## Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate restraints. Young children should not use the vehicle's adult safety belts alone, unless there is no other choice. Instead, they need to use a child restraint.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**People should never hold a baby in their arms while riding in a vehicle. A baby doesn't weigh much -- until a crash. During a crash a baby will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12-lb. (5.5 kg) baby will suddenly become a 240-lb. (110 kg) force on a person's arms. A baby should be secured in an appropriate restraint.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Children who are up against, or very close to, any air bag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Air bags plus lap-shoulder**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**belts offer outstanding protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its air bag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide.**

**Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?**

**A:** Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Newborn infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because a newborn infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants always should be secured in appropriate infant restraints.**

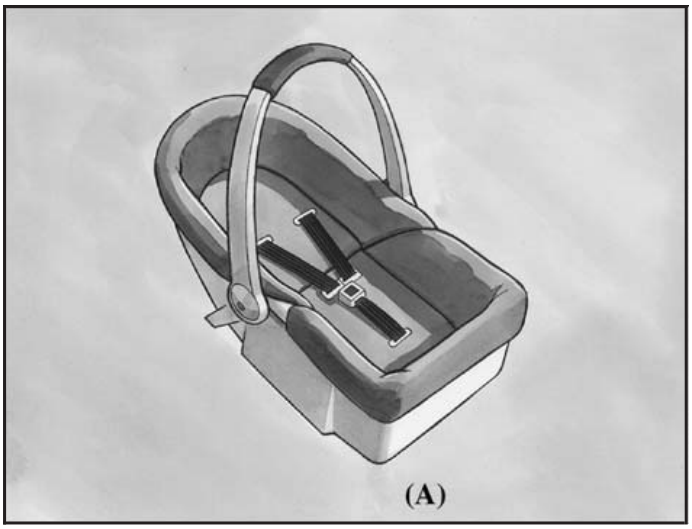
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**The body structure of a young child is quite unlike that of an adult or older child, for whom the safety belts are designed. A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that's unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. Young children always should be secured in appropriate child restraints.**

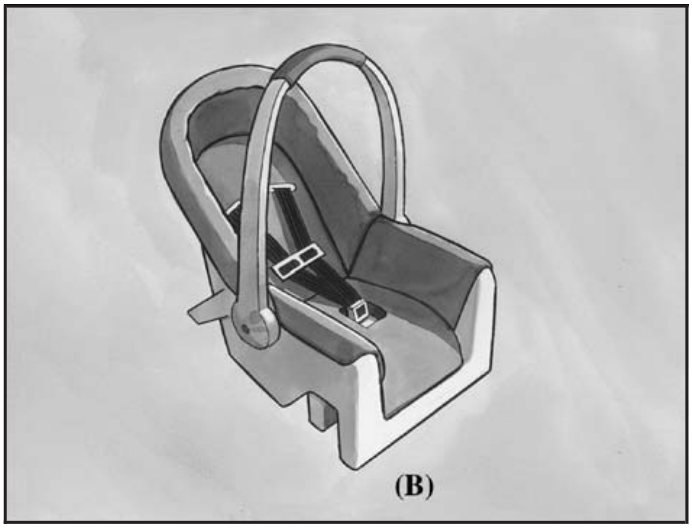


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Child Restraint Systems



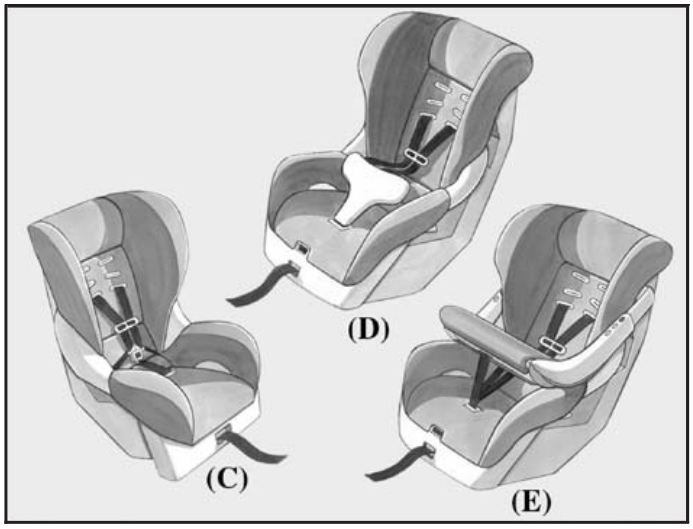

An infant car bed (A), a special bed made for use in a motor vehicle, is an infant restraint system designed to restrain or position a child on a continuous flat surface. Make sure that the infant's head rests toward the center of the vehicle.



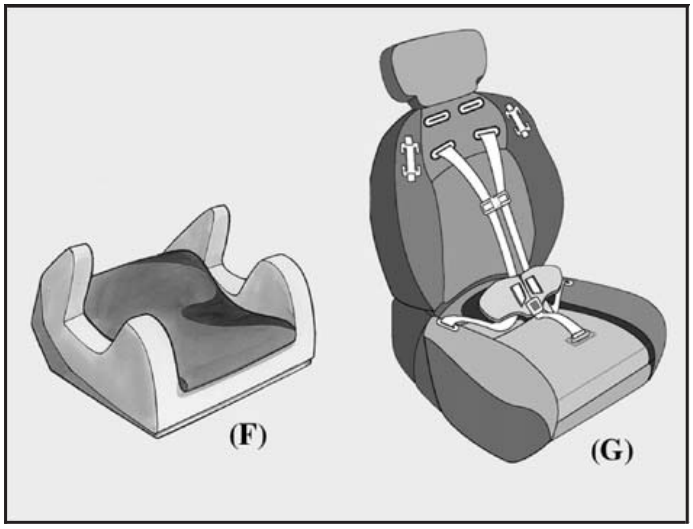

A rear-facing infant seat (B) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant. The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




A forward-facing child seat (C-E) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness and also sometimes with surfaces such as T-shaped or shelf-like shields.




A booster seat (F-G) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. Some booster seats have a shoulder belt positioner, and some high-back booster seats have a five-point harness. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Q: How do child restraints work?**

**A:** A child restraint system is any device designed for use in a motor vehicle to restrain, seat, or position children. A built-in child restraint system is a permanent part of the motor vehicle. An add-on child restraint system is a portable one, which is purchased by the vehicle's owner.

For many years, add-on child restraints have used the adult belt system in the vehicle. To help reduce the chance of injury, the child also has to be secured within the restraint. The vehicle's belt system secures the add-on child restraint in the vehicle, and the add-on child restraint's harness system holds the child in place within the restraint.

One system, the three-point harness, has straps that come down over each of the infant's shoulders and buckle together at the crotch. The five-point harness system has two shoulder straps, two hip straps and a crotch strap. A shield may take the place of hip straps. A T-shaped shield has shoulder straps that are attached to a flat pad which rests low against the child's body. A shelf- or armrest-type shield has straps that are attached to a wide, shelf-like shield that swings up or to the side.

When choosing a child restraint, be sure the child restraint is designed to be used in a vehicle. If it is, it will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

Then follow the instructions for the restraint. You may find these instructions on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both. These restraints use the belt system or the LATCH system in your vehicle, but the child also has to be secured within the restraint to help reduce the chance of personal injury. When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. We, therefore, recommend that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat. *Never* put a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat. Here's why:

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Always secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat.**

**If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.**

Wherever you install it, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle – even when no child is in it.

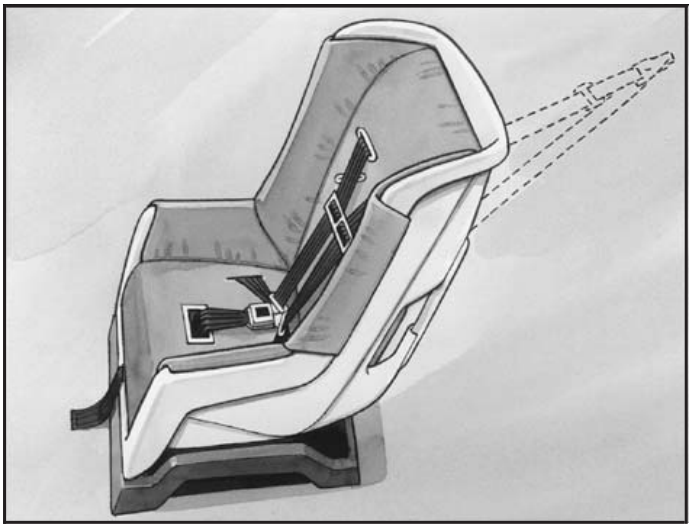
## Top Strap

Some child restraints have a top strap, or "top tether." It can help restrain the child restraint during a collision. For it to work, a top strap must be properly anchored to the vehicle. Some top strap-equipped child restraints are designed for use with or without the top strap being anchored. Others require the top strap always to be anchored. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint. If yours requires that the top strap be anchored, don't use the restraint unless it is anchored properly.

If the child restraint does not have a top strap, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top strap, and that the strap be anchored. In the United States, some child restraints also have a top strap. If your child restraint has a top strap, it should be anchored.

Anchor the top strap to an anchor point specified in *Top Strap Anchor Location on page 1-40*. Be sure to use an anchor point located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

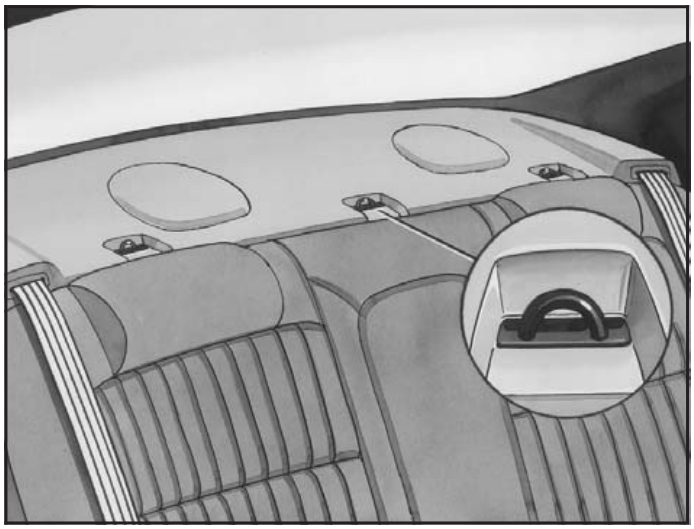
**Each top tether bracket is designed to anchor only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single bracket could cause the anchor to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured if this happens. To help prevent injury to people and damage to your vehicle, attach only one child restraint per bracket.**

Once you have the top strap anchored, you'll be ready to secure the child restraint itself. Tighten the top strap when and as the child restraint manufacturer's instructions say.



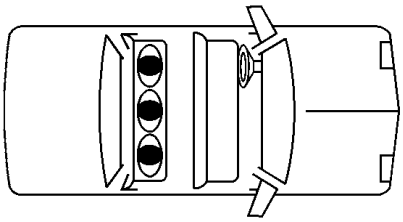
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Top Strap Anchor Location



Your vehicle has top strap anchors already installed for the rear seating positions. You'll find them behind the rear seat on the filler panel. Do not use a child restraint with a top strap in the right front passenger's position because there is no place to anchor the top strap.

## Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

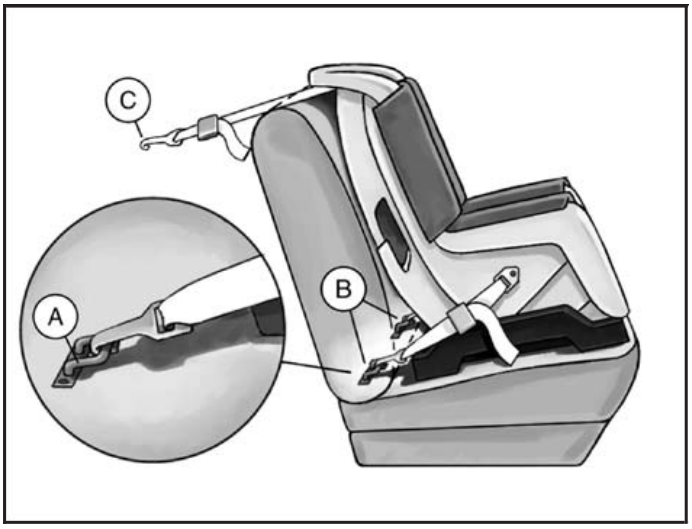


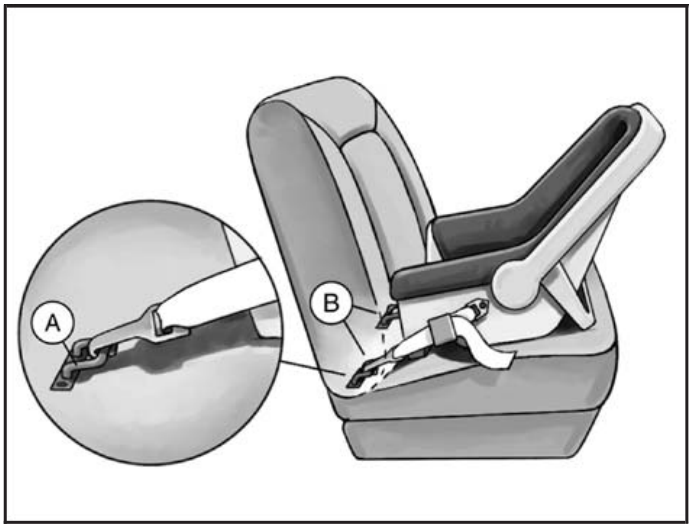
Your vehicle has the LATCH system. You'll find anchors (A) for all three rear seating positions.

This system, designed to make installation of child restraints easier, does not use the vehicle's safety belts. Instead, it uses vehicle anchors (A, B) and child restraint attachments to secure the restraints. Some restraints also use another vehicle anchor to secure a top tether strap (C).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint designed for that system.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To assist you in locating the lower anchors for this child restraint system, each seating position with the LATCH system has a label on the seatback at each lower anchor position.

The labels are located near the base of all three rear seating positions

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If a LATCH-type child restraint isn't attached to its anchorage points, the restraint won't be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure that a LATCH-type child restraint is properly installed using the anchorage points,**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint. See "Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System", "Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position" or "Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position" in the Index for information on how to secure a child restraint in your vehicle.**

## Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System (Rear)

1. Find the LATCH anchorages for the seating position you want to use, where the bottom of the seatback meets the back of the seat cushion.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Attach and tighten the LATCH attachments on the child restraint to the LATCH anchorages in the vehicle. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

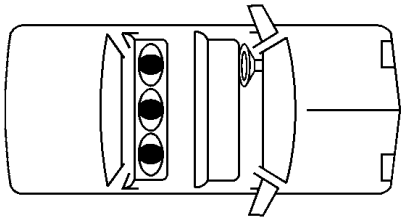


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. If the child restraint is forward-facing, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchorage. The child restraint instructions will show you how. Also see *Top Strap on page 1-38*.
5. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, simply unhook the top tether from the top tether anchorage and then disconnect the LATCH attachments from the LATCH anchorages.

## Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position



If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-40*. See *Top Strap on page 1-38* if the child restraint has one.

If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you'll be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Put the restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.

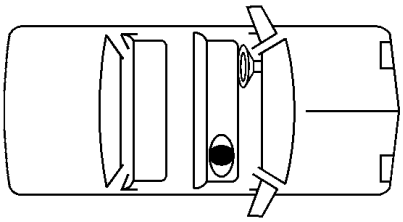


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. To tighten the belt, feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor while you push down on the child restraint. If you're using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

## Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position



If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-40*. See *Top Strap on page 1-38* if the child restraint has one.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle has a right front passenger air bag. *Never* put a rear-facing child restraint in this seat. Here is why:

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Always secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat.**

A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, you will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Because your vehicle has a right front passenger air bag, always move the seat as far back as it will go before securing a forward-facing child restraint. See *Manual Seats on page 1-2*.
2. Put the restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.

6. To tighten the belt, feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor while you push down on the child restraint. You may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Air Bag Systems

This part explains the frontal and side impact air bag systems.

Your vehicle has air bags – a frontal air bag for the driver and another frontal air bag for the right front passenger. Your vehicle may also have a side impact air bag for the driver.

If your vehicle has a side impact air bag for the driver it will say AIR BAG on the air bag covering on the side of the driver's seatback closest to the door.

Frontal air bags are designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating frontal air bag. But these air bags must inflate very quickly to do their job and comply with federal regulations.

Here are the most important things to know about the air bag systems:

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you aren't wearing your safety belt, even if you have air bags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Air bags are designed to work with safety belts but don't replace them.**

**Frontal air bags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to deploy only in moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crashes. They aren't designed to inflate at all in rollover, rear or low-speed frontal crashes, or in many side crashes. And, for some unrestrained occupants, frontal air bags may provide less protection in frontal crashes than more forceful air bags have provided in the past.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**The side impact air bag for the driver is designed to inflate only in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the driver's side of your vehicle. It isn't designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover or in rear crashes.**

**Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there's an air bag for that person.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

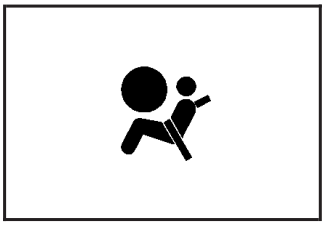
**Both frontal and side impact air bags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. If you're too close to an inflating air bag, as you would be if you were leaning forward, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts helpkeep you in position for air bag inflation beforeand during a crash. Always wearyour safety belt, even with frontal air bags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle, and should not lean on the door.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any air bag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Air bags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its air bag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see the part of this manual called "Older Children" or "Infants and Young Children."**



There is an air bag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows the air bag symbol.

The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Air Bag Readiness Light on page 3-33* for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Where Are the Air Bags?

The driver's frontal air bag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The right front passenger's frontal air bag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If your vehicle has one, the driver's side impact air bag is in the side of the driver's seatback closest to the door.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If something is between an occupant and an air bag, the bag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating air bag must be kept clear. Don't put anything between an occupant and an air bag, and don't attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other air bag covering. Don't let seat covers block the inflation path of a side impact air bag.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## When Should an Air Bag Inflate?

The driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes. But they are designed to inflate only if the impact speed is above the system's designed "threshold level."

In addition, your vehicle has "dual stage" frontal air bags, which adjust the amount of restraint according to crash severity. For moderate frontal impacts, these air bags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs. If the front of your vehicle goes straight into a wall that does not move or deform, the threshold level for the reduced deployment is about 12 to 18 mph (19 to 29 km/h), and the threshold level for a full deployment is about 18 to 24 mph (29 to 38.5 km/h). The threshold level can vary, however, with specific vehicle design, so that it can be somewhat above or below this range.

If your vehicle strikes something that will move or deform, such as a parked car, the threshold level will be higher. The driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags are not designed to inflate in rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts because inflation would not help the occupant.

Your vehicle may or may not have a driver's side impact air bag. See *Air Bag Systems on page 1-48*. A driver's side impact air bag is designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes involving the driver's door. A side impact air bag will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed "threshold level." The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design. A driver's side impact air bag is not designed to inflate in frontal or near-frontal impacts, rollovers or rear impacts, because inflation would not help the occupant.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an air bag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal air bags, inflation is determined by the angle of the impact and how quickly the vehicle slows down in frontal and near-frontal impacts. For side impact air bags, inflation is determined by the location and severity of the impact.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## What Makes an Air Bag Inflate?

In an impact of sufficient severity, the air bag sensing system detects that the vehicle is in a crash. For both the frontal and side impact air bags, the sensing system triggers a release of gas from the inflator, which inflates the air bag. The inflator, air bag and related hardware are all part of the air bag modules. Frontal air bag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with a driver's side impact air bag, the air bag modules are located in the seatback closest to the driver's door.

## How Does an Air Bag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle. The air bag supplements the protection provided by safety belts. Air bags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. But the frontal air bags would not help you in many types of collisions, including rollovers, rear impacts, and many side impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward the air bag. A side impact air bag would not help you in many types of collisions, including frontal or near frontal collisions, rollovers, and rear impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward that air bag. Air bags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts, and then only in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions for the driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags, and only in moderate to severe side collisions for vehicles with a driver's side impact air bag.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## What Will You See After an Air Bag Inflates?

After the air bag inflates, it quickly deflates, so quickly that some people may not even realize the air bag inflated. Some components of the air bag module will be hot for a short time. These components include the steering wheel hub for the driver's frontal air bag and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's frontal air bag. For vehicle's with a driver's side impact air bag, the side of the seatback closest to the driver's door will be hot. The parts of the bag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There will be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated air bags. Air bag inflation doesn't prevent the driver from seeing or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it stop people from leaving the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When an air bag inflates, there is dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but can't get out of the vehicle after an air bag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an air bag deployment, you should seek medical attention.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle has a feature that will automatically unlock the doors and turn the interior lamps on when the air bags inflate (if battery power is available). You can lock the doors again and turn the interior lamps off by using the door lock and interior lamp controls.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate an air bag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger air bag.

- Air bags are designed to inflate only once. After an air bag inflates, you'll need some new parts for your air bag system. If you don't get them, the air bag system won't be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include air bag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic frontal sensor, which helps the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. Your vehicle is also equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which records information about the frontal air bag system. The module records information about the readiness of the system, when the system commands air bag inflation and driver's safety belt usage at deployment. The module also records speed, engine RPM, brake and throttle data.
- Let only qualified technicians work on your air bag systems. Improper service can mean that an air bag system won't work properly. See your dealer for service.

***Notice:*** **If you damage the covering for the driver's or the right front passenger's air bag, or the air bag covering on the driver's seatback, the bag may not work properly. You may have to replace the air bag module in the steering wheel, both the air bag module and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's air bag, or the air bag module and seatback for the driver's side impact air bag. Do not open or break the air bag coverings.**

## Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle

Air bags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the air bag systems in several places around your vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the air bag systems. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-13*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**For up to 10 seconds after the ignition key is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an air bag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an air bag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the air bag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.**

The air bag systems do not need regular maintenance.

# Restraint System Check

## Checking Your Restraint Systems

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired.

Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Also look for any opened or broken air bag covers, and have them repaired or replaced. (The air bag system does not need regular maintenance.)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.**

If you've had a crash, do you need new belts or LATCH system parts?

After a very minor collision, nothing may be necessary. But if the belts were stretched, as they would be if worn during a more severe crash, then you need new parts.

If the LATCH system was being used during a more severe crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

If belts are cut or damaged, replace them. Collision damage also may mean you will need to have LATCH system, safety belt or seat parts repaired or replaced. New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt or LATCH system wasn't being used at the time of the collision.

If an air bag inflates, you'll need to replace air bag system parts. See the part on the air bag system earlier in this section.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 2 Features and Controls


**Keys** ....2-2
Remote Keyless Entry System ....2-3
Remote Keyless Entry System Operation ....2-4

**Doors and Locks** ....2-8
Door Locks ....2-8
Power Door Locks ....2-9
Programmable Automatic Door Locks ....2-9
Lockout Protection ....2-10
Leaving Your Vehicle ....2-10
Trunk ....2-10

**Windows** ....2-13
Power Windows ....2-14
Sun Visors ....2-14

**Theft-Deterrent Systems** ....2-15
Content Theft-Deterrent ....2-15
Passlock® ....2-16

**Starting and Operating Your Vehicle** ....2-17
New Vehicle Break-In ....2-17
Ignition Positions ....2-17
Starting Your Engine ....2-18
Engine Coolant Heater ....2-20
Automatic Transaxle Operation ....2-21
Parking Brake ....2-25
Shifting Into Park (P) ....2-26
Shifting Out of Park (P) ....2-28
Parking Over Things That Burn ....2-28
Engine Exhaust ....2-29
Running Your Engine While You Are Parked ....2-30

**Mirrors** ....2-31
Manual Rearview Mirror ....2-31
Manual Rearview Mirror with OnStar® ....2-31
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror ....2-32
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar® ....2-32
Outside Power Mirrors ....2-33
Outside Convex Mirror ....2-34
Outside Heated Mirrors ....2-34

**OnStar® System** ....2-34

**HomeLink® Transmitter** ....2-36
Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter ....2-36

**Storage Areas** ....2-40
Glove Box ....2-40
Center Console Storage Area ....2-40
Rear Storage Area ....2-40
Convenience Net ....2-40

**Sunroof** ....2-41

**Vehicle Personalization** ....2-42



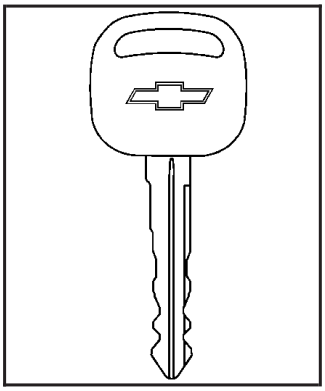

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Keys

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The children or others could be badly injured or even killed. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



One key is used for the ignition, the driver's door and all other locks.

If you need a new key, contact your dealer for assistance. In an emergency, contact Chevrolet Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-6* for more information.

***Notice:*** **If you ever lock your keys in your vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.**

If your vehicle is equipped with the OnStar® system, with an active subscription and you lock your keys inside the vehicle, OnStar® may be able to send a command to unlock your vehicle. See *OnStar® System on page 2-34* for more information.

## Remote Keyless Entry System

The remote keyless entry system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

At times you may notice a decrease in range. This is normal for any remote keyless entry system. If the transmitter does not work or if you have to stand closer to your vehicle for the transmitter to work, try this:

- Check the distance. You may be too far from your vehicle. You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check to determine if battery replacement or resynchronization is necessary. See “Battery Replacement” and “Resynchronization” under *Remote Keyless Entry System Operation on page 2-4*.
- If you are still having trouble, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

## Remote Keyless Entry System Operation

Using the remote keyless entry transmitter, you can lock and unlock your doors or release your trunk from about 3 feet (1 m) up to 30 feet (9 m) away.

**LOCK:** Press the LOCK button to lock all the doors.

**UNLOCK:** Press the UNLOCK button once to unlock the driver’s door and turn on the interior lamps. See “Illumination on Remote Activation” later in this section for more details. Pause for about one second, then press UNLOCK again to unlock the passenger door.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**(Remote Alarm):** Press this button to activate an alarm. The ignition must be in OFF or ACC for the remote alarm to work. When you press the remote button, the headlamps will flash, the horn will sound repeatedly and your interior lamps will turn on attracting attention if you need it. The alarm will continue until one of the following occurs:

- The remote alarm button is pressed a second time,
- the vehicle's ignition is turned to ON or
- an alarm period of 110 seconds has elapsed.

**(Trunk Release):** Press the button to release the trunk.

Operating the remote keyless entry transmitter may interact with the content theft-deterrent system, if your vehicle has this option. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-15*.

## Transmitter Verification

This feature provides feedback that a command has been received by the vehicle, if your key fob has been programmed to Mode 3: Full, see Fob Horn (Remote Audible Verification) under *Vehicle Personalization on page 2-42* for more information. The headlamps and back-up lamps will flash on every lock command and on the first unlock command. The horn will also sound once for every lock and twice for the first unlock command. Silent operation and other options may be selected for this feature.

If your vehicle has the optional content theft-deterrent system, the first time the remote unlock is received and the alarm has been previously activated, three flashes from the headlamps will be seen and three chirps will be heard to indicate an alarm condition has occurred since last arming. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-15*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Illumination on Remote Activation

The interior lamps will come on when either the UNLOCK, the trunk release or the remote alarm button is pressed. The interior lamps will remain on for 40 seconds or until the ignition is turned to ON or LOCK is pressed. Locking the doors with the power door locks will also cause the lamps to turn off. If a door is opened during the 40 second period, the interior lamps will remain on while the door is open.

## Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle

Each remote keyless entry transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer. Remember to bring any remaining transmitters with you when you go to your dealer. When the dealer matches the replacement transmitter to your vehicle, any remaining transmitters must also be matched. Once your dealer has coded the new transmitter, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle. Each vehicle can have a maximum of four transmitters matched to it.

If you prefer, you can complete this procedure yourself. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 2-42* for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Battery Replacement

Under normal use, the battery in your remote keyless entry transmitter should last about three years.

You can tell the battery is weak if the transmitter won't work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, it's probably time to change the battery.

***Notice:*** **When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.**

To replace the battery do the following:

1. Insert a flat object like a coin into the slot on the back of the transmitter. Gently pry apart the front and back.
2. Gently pry the battery out of the transmitter. Do not use a metal object.
3. Put the new battery into the transmitter as shown on the transmitter. Use type CR2032 battery or equivalent.
4. Put the two halves back together. Make sure the halves are together tightly so water won't get in.
5. Resynchronize and then test the transmitter.

## Resynchronization

After you have changed the battery in your transmitter, you will need to resynchronize the transmitter. To do this, press the LOCK and UNLOCK buttons on the transmitter at the same time and hold for about seven seconds or until one horn chirp is heard.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Doors and Locks

## Door Locks

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Unlocked doors can be dangerous.**

- **Passengers — especially children — can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors are not locked. So, wear safety belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.**
- **Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.**
- **Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.**

There are several ways to lock and unlock the vehicle.

From the outside, use your key or the optional remote keyless entry transmitter. From the inside, use the manual or power door locks.

To manually unlock the driver's door from the outside, insert the key and turn it toward the front of the vehicle.

To manually lock the driver's door from the outside, insert the key and turn it toward the rear of the vehicle.

To lock a door from the inside, push the manual lock lever forward. To unlock a door, push the lever rearward.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Power Door Locks

A power door lock switch is located on each front door above the armrest.

Press the top of the switch to unlock both doors, or press the bottom of the switch to lock both doors.

If your vehicle has the optional content theft-deterrent system and it is armed, the power door lock switches will be disabled. You must use your remote keyless entry transmitter or your key to unlock the doors while the system is armed.

## Programmable Automatic Door Locks

Programmable automatic power door locks are a standard feature that is intended to provide enhanced security and convenience by automatically locking and unlocking doors.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** No automatic door lock or unlock.

**Mode 2:** Automatic all-door lock when the transaxle is shifted out of PARK (P); no automatic door unlock.

**Mode 3:** Automatic all-door lock when the transaxle is shifted out of PARK (P); automatic unlock for the driver's door only when the transaxle is shifted into PARK (P).

**Mode 4:** Automatic all-door lock when the transaxle is shifted out of PARK (P); automatic all-door unlock when the transaxle is shifted into PARK (P).

Before your vehicle was shipped from the factory, it was programmed to Mode 4. The mode to which the vehicle was programmed may have been changed since it left the factory. To determine the mode to which your vehicle is programmed or to program your vehicle to a different mode, see *Vehicle Personalization on page 2-42*.

Disconnecting the vehicle's battery for up to a year will not change any previously programmed modes.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Lockout Protection

To protect you from locking your key in the vehicle, this feature stops the power door locks from locking while the key is in the ignition and a door is open.

If a power lock switch is pressed while a door is open and the key is in the ignition, both doors will lock and then the driver's door will unlock. A chime will sound continuously until both doors are closed.

## Leaving Your Vehicle

If you are leaving the vehicle, take your keys, open your door and set the locks from inside. Then get out and close the door.

## Trunk

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It can be dangerous to drive with the trunk lid open because carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You can not see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. If you must drive with the trunk lid open or if electrical wiring or other cable connections must pass through the seal between the body and the trunk lid:**

- **Make sure all other windows are shut.**
- **Turn the fan on your heating or cooling system to its highest speed and select the control setting that will force outside air into your vehicle. See Climate Control System in the Index.**
- **If you have air outlets on or under the instrument panel, open them all the way.**

**See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-29*.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Trunk Lock

To unlock the trunk from the outside, insert the key in the lock and turn it. You can also press the car symbol on your remote keyless entry transmitter.

## Remote Trunk Release

You can also unlock the trunk from inside the vehicle.

Press the button located below the exterior lamps control on the underside of the dashboard. The shift lever must be in PARK (P) for the remote trunk release button to work.

## Trunk Assist Handle

There is an assist handle located on the inside of the trunk lid toward the driver's side of the vehicle.

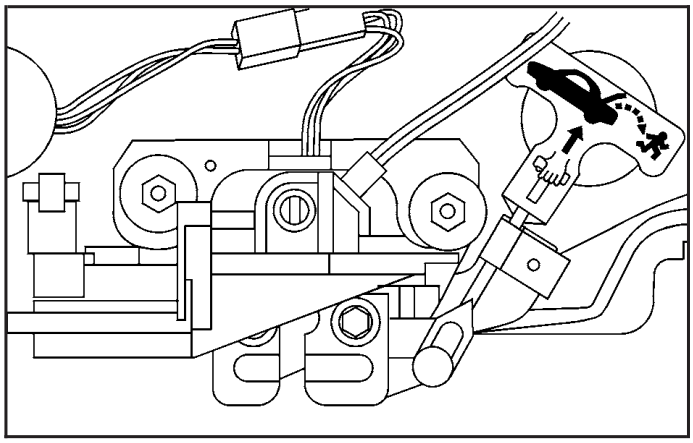
Pull down on the handle to lower the trunk lid. Then close the trunk with your other hand. If the trunk is not properly closed, the TRUNK OPEN message will appear in the message center of your instrument panel cluster. See *Trunk Ajar Warning Message on page 3-47* for more information.

***Notice:*** **Using the trunk assist handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk may damage it. Use the trunk assist handle only to help you close the trunk lid.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Emergency Trunk Release Handle



There is a glow-in-the-dark emergency trunk release handle located inside the trunk on the latch. This handle will glow following exposure to light. Pull the release handle up to open the trunk from the inside.

***Notice:*** **Using the emergency trunk release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk may damage it. Use the emergency trunk release handle only to help you open the trunk lid.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Windows

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Leaving children in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. A child can be overcome by the extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Power Windows

Both doors have power window switches located on the armrest. Press the front of the switch to raise the window. Press the back of the switch to lower it. The switches on the driver's door armrest control each of the windows when the ignition is in ON, ACC, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See "Retained Accessory Power (RAP)" under *Ignition Positions on page 2-17*.

## Express-Down Window

The driver's window switch has an express-down feature. This switch is labeled AUTO. Tap the rear of the switch and the driver's window will open a small amount. If the rear of the switch is pressed down all the way, the window will go all the way down.

To stop the window while it is lowering, press the front of the switch. To raise the window, press and hold the front of the switch.

## Sun Visors

To block out glare, you can swing down the visors. You can also move them from side to side. The visors also have extenders that you can pull out for added coverage.

## Visor Vanity Mirrors

Open the cover on the top of the sun visor to expose the vanity mirror.

If your vehicle has the lighted vanity mirrors, the lamps come on when you open the cover.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. Although your vehicle has a number of theft-deterrent features, we know that nothing we put on it can make it impossible to steal.

## Content Theft-Deterrent

Your vehicle may have the optional content theft-deterrent alarm system.

With this system, a light on the radio will flash.

This light reminds you to activate the theft-deterrent system. Here's how to do it:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door with the power door lock switch or the remote keyless entry transmitter. The light on the radio should come on and stay on. If you are using the remote keyless entry transmitter, the door does not need to be open.
3. Close all doors. The light on the radio will slowly flash once the system is armed.

Once armed, the alarm will go off if someone tries to enter the vehicle (without using the remote keyless entry transmitter or a key) or turns the ignition on with an incorrect key. The horn will sound and the headlamps and back-up lamps will flash for approximately two minutes.

When the alarm is armed, the trunk may be opened with the remote keyless entry transmitter. If you use the key to open the trunk, the alarm will sound. The power door lock switches are also disabled. You must use your remote keyless entry transmitter or your key to unlock the doors when the system is armed.

### Arming with the Power Lock Switch

Your alarm system will arm when you use either power lock switch to lock the doors while any door or the trunk is open and the key is removed from the ignition.

The light on the radio flashes quickly to let you know when the system is ready to arm with the power door lock switches. The light on the radio will stop flashing and stay on when you press the bottom of the power lock switch, to let you know the system is arming. After all doors and the trunk are closed and locked, the light on the radio will flash slowly to let you know the system is armed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Arming with the Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter

Your alarm system will arm when you use your remote keyless entry transmitter to lock the doors, if the key is not in the ignition. The light on the radio will turn on to let you know the system is arming. After all doors and the trunk are closed and locked, the light on the radio will begin flashing at a very slow rate to let you know the system is armed.

## Disarming with the Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter

Your alarm system will disarm when you use your remote keyless entry transmitter to unlock the doors. The light on the radio will go off to let you know the system is no longer armed.

The first time a remote UNLOCK command is received, three flashes will be seen and three horn chirps heard to indicate an alarm condition has occurred since last arming.

## Disarming with Your Key

Your alarm system will disarm when you use your key to unlock the doors. The light on the radio will go off to let you know the system is no longer armed.

## Passlock®

Your vehicle is equipped with the Passlock® theft-deterrent system.

Passlock® is a passive theft-deterrent system. Passlock® enables fuel if the ignition lock cylinder is turned with a valid key. If a correct key is not used or the ignition lock cylinder is tampered with, fuel is disabled and the engine will not start.

During normal operation, the SECURITY message will be displayed after the key is turned to the ON ignition position. See *Security Message on page 3-48*.

If the engine stalls and the SECURITY message flashes, wait until the light stops flashing before trying to restart the engine.

If the engine is running and the SECURITY message comes on, you will be able to restart the engine if you turn the engine off. However, your Passlock® system is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. Your vehicle is not protected by Passlock® at this time. You may also want to check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*. See your dealer for service.

In an emergency, contact Chevrolet Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-6* for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

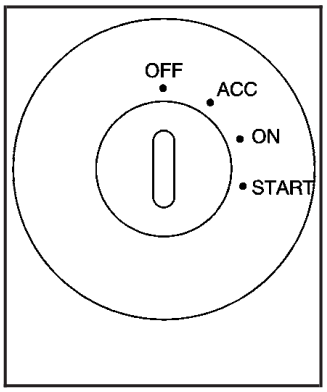
## New Vehicle Break-In

***Notice:*** **Your vehicle does not need an elaborate "break-in." But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Do not drive at any one speed — fast or slow — for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time your new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-38* for more information.**

## Ignition Positions

With the key in the ignition, you can turn the switch to four positions.




The ignition switch is located on the instrument panel, to the right of the steering column.

**OFF:** This position locks your steering column in a vehicle with a manual transmission. It is a theft-deterrent feature. You will only be able to remove your key when the ignition is turned to OFF.

***Notice:*** **If your key seems stuck in OFF and you can not turn it, be sure you are using the correct key; if so, is it all the way in? Turn the key only with your hand. Using a tool to force it could break the key or the ignition switch. If none of this works, then your vehicle needs service.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**ACC (ACCESSORY):** This is the position in which you can operate your electrical accessories. With the key in this position, the ignition and automatic transaxle will unlock.

**ON:** This is the position to which the switch returns after you start the engine and release the switch. The switch stays in ON while the engine is running. But even when the engine is not running, you can use ON to operate your electrical accessories and to display some instrument panel cluster messages and warning lights.

**START:** This position starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch will return to ON for normal driving.

While the engine is not running, ACC and ON allow you to operate your electrical accessories, such as the radio.

A warning chime will sound if you open the driver's door while the ignition is in OFF or ACC and the key is in the ignition.

## Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

With Retained Accessory Power (RAP), your power windows, audio system and sunroof (option) will continue to work for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to OFF and none of the doors is opened.

## Starting Your Engine

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine won't start in any other position — that's a safety feature. To restart when you're already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

***Notice:*** **Shifting into PARK (P) with the vehicle moving could damage the transaxle. Shift into PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.**

## Starting Your 3400 V6 Engine

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn your ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine warms up.

***Notice:*** **Holding your key in START for longer than 15 seconds at a time will cause your battery to be drained much sooner. And the excessive heat can damage your starter motor. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.**

2. If the engine doesn't start in 10 seconds, push the accelerator pedal about one-quarter of the way down while you turn the key to START. Do this until the engine starts. As soon as it does, let go of the key.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. If your engine still won't start (or starts but then stops), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing your accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for a maximum of 15 seconds. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. If the engine still won't start or starts briefly but then stops again, repeat Step 1 or 2, depending on temperature. When the engine starts, release the key and the accelerator pedal.

***Notice:*** **Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly.**

## Starting Your 3800 Series II V6 Engine

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn your ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm.

***Notice:*** **Holding your key in START for longer than 15 seconds at a time will cause your battery to be drained much sooner. And the excessive heat can damage your starter motor. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.**

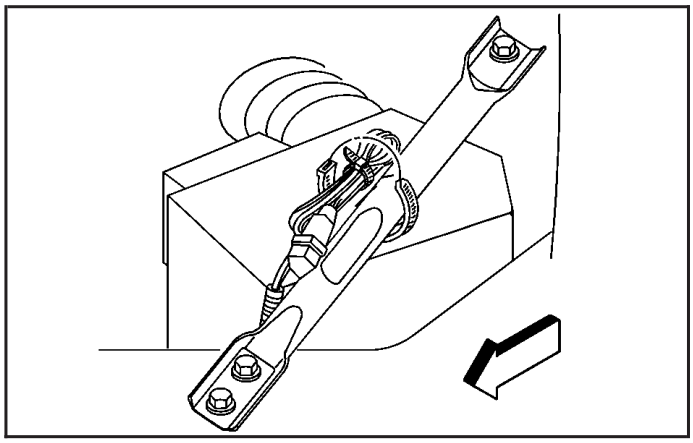
2. If it doesn't start within 10 seconds, hold your key in START for about 10 seconds at a time until your engine starts. Wait about 15 seconds between each try.
3. If your engine still won't start (or starts but then stops), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing your accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for about three seconds. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This time keep the pedal down for five or six seconds to clear the extra gasoline from the engine. After waiting about 15 seconds, repeat the normal starting procedure.

***Notice:*** **Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Engine Coolant Heater



Your vehicle may be equipped with this feature. In very cold weather, 0°F (–18°C) or colder, the engine coolant heater can help. You'll get easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Usually, the coolant heater should be plugged in a minimum of four hours prior to starting your vehicle. At temperatures above 32°F (0°C), use of the coolant heater is not required.

## To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is attached to the underside of the diagonal brace, which is located above the engine air cleaner/filter assembly.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you don't, it could be damaged.

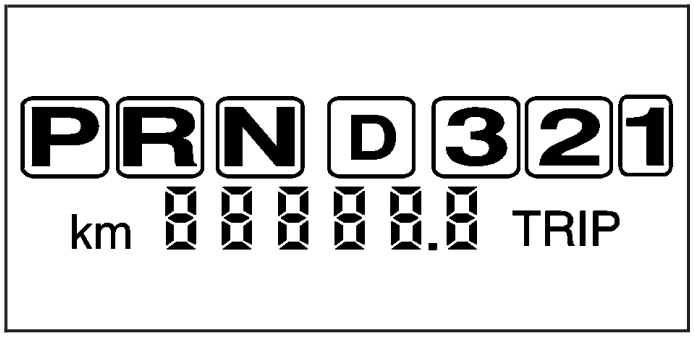
How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer in the area where you'll be parking your vehicle. The dealer can give you the best advice for that particular area.

## Automatic Transaxle Operation

Your automatic transaxle has a shift lever located on the console between the front seats.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




The above graphic is displayed on your instrument panel cluster.

Maximum engine speed is limited on automatic transaxle vehicles while you're in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) to protect driveline components from improper operation.

There are several different positions for your shift lever.

**PARK (P):** This position locks your front wheels. It's the best position to use when you start your engine because your vehicle can't move easily.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.**

**Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured.**
**To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-26*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-38*.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Make sure the shift lever is fully in PARK (P) before starting the engine. Your vehicle has an automatic transaxle shift lock control system. You must fully apply your regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) while the ignition is in ON. If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever by pushing it all the way into PARK (P) while keeping the brake pedal pushed down and the shift lever button pressed in. Release the shift lever button. Then move the shift lever out of PARK (P). See *Shifting Out of Park (P) on page 2-28*.

**REVERSE (R):** Use this gear to back up.

***Notice:*** **Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transaxle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.**

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging your transaxle, see If *You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-30*.

**NEUTRAL (N):** In this position, your engine doesn't connect with the wheels. To restart when you're already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only. Also, use NEUTRAL (N) when your vehicle is being towed.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Shifting into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed.**

***Notice:*** **Shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) with the engine racing may damage the transaxle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Be sure the engine is not racing when shifting your vehicle.**

**AUTOMATIC OVERDRIVE (D):** This position is for normal driving. If you need more power for passing, and you're:

- going less than 35 mph (55 km/h), push your accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator pedal all the way down.

You'll shift down to the next gear and have more power.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Notice:*** **Driving your vehicle if you notice that it is moving slowly or not shifting gears as you increase speed may damage the transaxle. Have your vehicle serviced right away. You can drive in SECOND (2) when you are driving less than 35 mph (55 km/h) and AUTOMATIC OVERDRIVE (D) for higher speeds until then.**

**THIRD (3):** This position is also used for normal driving, but it offers more power and lower fuel economy than AUTOMATIC OVERDRIVE (D).

Here are some times you might choose THIRD (3) instead of AUTOMATIC OVERDRIVE (D):

- When driving on hilly, winding roads.
- When towing a trailer, so there is less shifting between gears.
- When going down a steep hill.
- When driving in non-highway scenarios (i.e. city streets, etc.).

**SECOND (2):** This position gives you more power than THIRD (3) but lower fuel economy than THIRD (3). You can use SECOND (2) on hills. It can help control your speed as you go down steep mountain roads, but then you would also want to use your brakes off and on.

***Notice:*** **Driving in SECOND (2) for more than 25 miles (40 km) or at speeds over 55 mph (90 km/h) may damage the transaxle. Also, shifting into SECOND (2) at speeds above 65 mph (105 km/h) can cause damage. Drive in THIRD (3) or AUTOMATIC OVERDRIVE (D) instead of SECOND (2).**

**FIRST (1):** This position gives you even more power but lower fuel economy than SECOND (2). You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is in FIRST (1), the transaxle won't shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

***Notice:*** **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transaxle. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Parking Brake

The parking brake is located to the left of the brake pedal, near the driver's door.

To set the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down with your right foot. Push down the parking brake pedal with your left foot.

To release the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and push the parking brake pedal with your left foot. When you lift your left foot, the parking brake pedal will follow it to the released position.

A warning chime will sound if the parking brake is set, the ignition is on and the shift lever is not in PARK (P).

***Notice:*** **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Verify that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

If you are towing a trailer and parking on any hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-38*. That section shows what to do first to keep the trailer from moving.



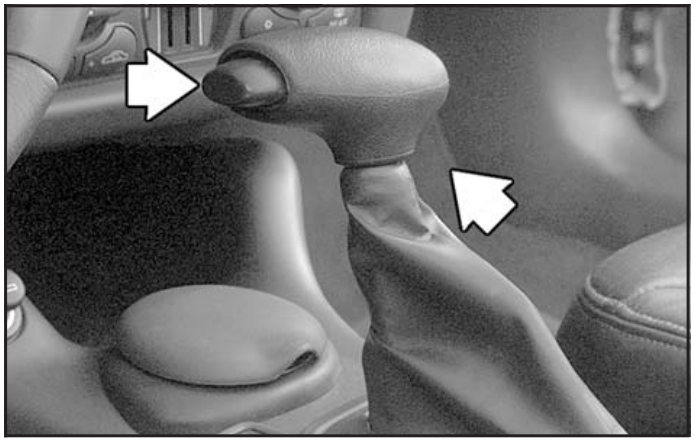
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Shifting Into Park (P)

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-38*.**

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and set the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) like this:



   - Press and hold in the shift lever button located on the left side of the shift lever.
   - Push the shift lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition key to OFF.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, your vehicle is in PARK (P).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave your vehicle with the engine running.**

If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and your parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you've moved the shift lever into the PARK (P) position, hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from PARK (P) without first pulling it toward you (or, if you have the console shift lever, without first pushing the button). If you can, it means that the shift lever wasn't fully locked into PARK (P).

## Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you don't shift your transaxle into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transaxle. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called "torque lock." To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver's seat. To find out how, see *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-26*.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of PARK (P) *before* you release the parking brake

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transaxle, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Shifting Out of Park (P)

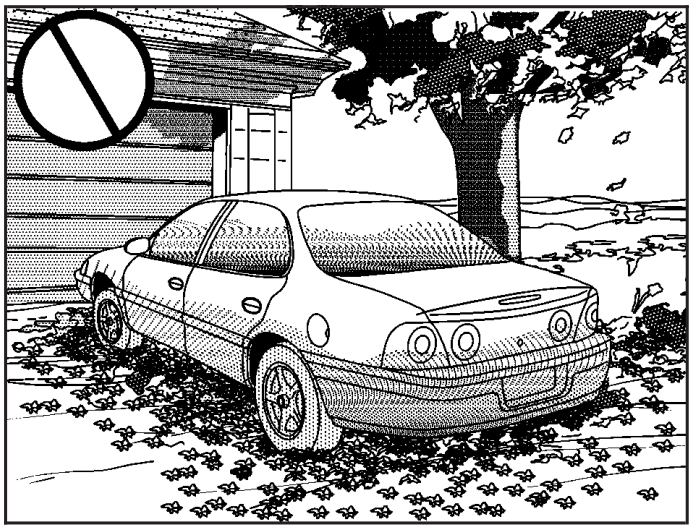
Your vehicle has an automatic transaxle shift lock control system. You must fully apply your regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition is in ON. See *Automatic Transaxle Operation on page 2-21*.

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever by pushing it all the way into PARK (P) while keeping the brake pedal pushed down. Then move the shift lever out of PARK (P), being sure to press the shift lever button.

If you ever hold the brake pedal down but still can't shift out of PARK (P), try this:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal until the end of Step 4.
3. Shift to NEUTRAL (N).
4. Start the engine and shift to the drive gear you want.
5. Have the vehicle fixed as soon as you can.

## Parking Over Things That Burn





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.**

## Engine Exhaust

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you can not see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.**

**You might have exhaust coming in if:**

- **Your exhaust system sounds strange or different.**
- **Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.**
- **Repairs were not done correctly.**
- **Your vehicle or exhaust system had been modified improperly.**

**If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:**

- **Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and**
- **Have your vehicle fixed immediately.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Running Your Engine While You Are Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle. See the earlier Caution under *Engine Exhaust on page 2-29*.**

**Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the climate control fan is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust — with CO — can come in easily. NEVER park in a garage with the engine running.**

**Another closed-in place can be a blizzard. See *Winter Driving on page 4-26*.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured.**
**To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P).**

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-26*.

If you are parking on a hill and if you are pulling a trailer, also see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-38*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Mirrors

## Manual Rearview Mirror

Adjust all the mirrors so you can see clearly when you are sitting in a comfortable driving position.

To reduce glare from headlamps behind you, pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror toward you (to the night position). To return the mirror back to the day position, push the lever away from you.

There are two lamps located on the bottom of the mirror. Press the button next to each lamp to turn it on and off.

## Manual Rearview Mirror with OnStar®

If your vehicle has this feature, this mirror has a lever located at the bottom of the mirror between the two lamps. It is used to change the mirror from day to night position. To reduce glare from headlamps behind you while driving at night, pull the lever toward you. To return the mirror to the day position, return the lever to its original position.

There are two map lamps located on the bottom of the mirror. Press the button next to each lamp to turn it on and off.

There are also three OnStar® buttons located at the bottom of the mirror face. See your dealer for more information on the system and how to subscribe to OnStar®. See *OnStar® System on page 2-34* for more information about the services OnStar® provides.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

Your vehicle may be equipped with an automatic dimming rearview mirror. Push the center button below the mirror to turn this feature on. The mirror will darken gradually to reduce glare from headlamps behind you. This may take a few moments. The mirror will lighten whenever you shift to REVERSE (R).

There are two lamps located on the bottom of the mirror. Press the button next to each lamp to turn it on and off.

One photocell on the front of the mirror senses when it is becoming dark outside. Another photocell, facing rearward, senses headlamps behind you. To turn the automatic dimming feature off, press the center button again.

To keep the photocells operating well, occasionally clean them with a cotton swab and glass cleaner.

## Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®

Your vehicle may be equipped with an automatic dimming rearview mirror with the OnStar® System.

Press the button located below the mirror, on the far left, for up to three seconds to turn the automatic dimming feature off and on. While turned on, this mirror functions exactly like the automatic dimming mirror described previously.

There are two lamps located on the bottom of the mirror. Press the button next to each lamp to turn it on and off.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

There are also three OnStar® buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer for more information on the system and how to subscribe to OnStar®. See *OnStar® System on page 2-34* for more information about the service OnStar® provides.

## Outside Power Mirrors

The outside power mirror controls are located near the driver's side window, on the armrest.

Use the selector switch located above the four-way control panel to choose either the left or right outside mirror. Then press any of the four arrows located on the control pad to move each mirror in the desired direction.

Adjust each mirror so you can see the side of your vehicle and the area beside and behind your vehicle.

## Heated Outside Mirrors

If your vehicle has this feature, the surface of the outside mirrors will heat when the rear window defogger is activated.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Outside Convex Mirror

Your passenger's side mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved so you can see more from the driver's seat.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.**

## Outside Heated Mirrors

If your vehicle has this option, the surface of both outside mirrors will heat when you activate the rear window defogger. See "Rear Window Defogger" under *Dual Climate Control System on page 3-20*.

# OnStar® System

OnStar® uses global positioning system (GPS) satellite technology, wireless communications, and call centers to provide you with a wide range of safety, security, information and convenience services.

A complete OnStar® user's guide and the terms and conditions of the OnStar® Subscription Service Agreement are included in your vehicle's glove box literature. For more information, visit www.onstar.com, contact OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827), or press the blue OnStar® button to speak to an OnStar® advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

A completed Subscription Service Agreement is required prior to delivery of OnStar® services and prepaid calling minutes are also required for OnStar® Personal Calling and OnStar® Virtual Advisor use. Terms and conditions of the Subscription Service Agreement can be found at www.onstar.com.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## OnStar® Services

One of the following plans is normally included for a specific duration with each vehicle equipped with OnStar®. You can upgrade or extend your OnStar® service plan to meet your needs.

### Safe and Sound Plan

- Automatic Notification of Air Bag Deployment
- Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Assistance
- AccidentAssist
- Remote Door Unlock
- Remote Diagnostics
- Online Concierge

### Directions and Connections Plan

- All Safe and Sound Plan services
- Route Support
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

### Luxury and Leisure Plan

- All Directions and Connections Plan services
- Personal Concierge

## OnStar® Personal Calling

With OnStar® Personal Calling, you have a safer way to stay connected while driving. It's a hands-free wireless phone that's integrated into your vehicle. You can place calls nationwide using voice-activated dialing with no contracts and no additional roaming charges. To find out more about OnStar® Personal Calling, refer to the OnStar® user's guide in your vehicle's glove box, or call OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

## OnStar® Virtual Advisor

With OnStar® Virtual Advisor you can listen to the news, entertainment and informative topics, such as traffic and weather reports. You are able to listen and reply to your e-mail through your vehicle's speakers.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# HomeLink® Transmitter

HomeLink®, a combined universal transmitter and receiver, provides a way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters used to activate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems and home lighting. Additional HomeLink® information can be found on the internet at www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

If your vehicle is equipped with the HomeLink® Transmitter, it complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes and modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

## Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter

Do not use the HomeLink® Transmitter with any garage door opener that does not have the “stop and reverse” feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982. If you have a newer garage door opener with rolling codes, please be sure to follow steps 6 through 8 to complete the programming of your HomeLink® Transmitter.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the HomeLink® Transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you in programming the transmitter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keep the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future HomeLink® programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink® buttons should be erased for security purposes. Refer to “Erasing HomeLink® Buttons” or, for assistance, contact HomeLink® on the internet at: www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate operator you are programming. When programming a garage door, it is advised to park outside of the garage.

It is recommended that a new battery be installed in your hand-held transmitter for quicker and more accurate transmission of the radio frequency.

Your vehicle’s engine should be turned off while programming the transmitter. Follow these steps to program up to three channels:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons, releasing only when the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds. Do not hold down the buttons for longer than 30 seconds and do not repeat this step to program a second and/or third transmitter to the remaining two HomeLink® buttons.
2. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter about 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink® buttons while keeping the indicator light in view.
3. Simultaneously press and hold both the desired button on HomeLink® and the hand-held transmitter button. Do not release the buttons until Step 4 has been completed.

   Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to substitute Step 3 with the procedure noted in “Gate Operator and Canadian Programming” later in this section.
4. The indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly after HomeLink® successfully receives the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons.
5. Press and hold the newly-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.

   If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.

   To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, begin with Step 2 under “Programming HomeLink®.” Do not repeat Step 1 as this will erase all of the programmed channels.

   If the indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with Steps 6 through 8 following to complete the programming of a rolling-code equipped device (most commonly, a garage door opener).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Locate in the garage, the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit.
7. Firmly press and release the “Learn” or “Smart” button. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

   You will have 30 seconds to start Step 8.
8. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button for two seconds, then release. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence a second time, and depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

   HomeLink® should now activate your rolling-code equipped device.

To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, begin with Step 2 of “Programming HomeLink®.” Do not repeat Step 1.

## Gate Operator and Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to “time out” or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for HomeLink® to pick up the signal during programming. Similarly, some U.S. gate operators are manufactured to “time out” in the same manner.

If you live in Canada, or you are having difficulty programming a gate operator by using the “Programming HomeLink®” procedures (regardless of where you live), replace Step 3 under “Programming HomeLink®” with the following:

Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button while you press and release every two seconds (cycle) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been successfully accepted by HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 4 under “Programming HomeLink®” to complete.

## Using HomeLink®

Press and hold the appropriate HomeLink® button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Erasing HomeLink® Buttons

To erase programming from the three buttons do the following:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds.
2. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.

HomeLink® is now in the train (learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 2 under “Programming HomeLink®.”

Individual buttons can not be erased, but they can be reprogrammed. See “Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button” next.

## Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button

To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. While still holding the HomeLink® button, proceed with Step 2 under “Programming HomeLink®.”

## Resetting Defaults

To reset HomeLink® to default settings do the following:

1. Hold down the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds until the indicator light begins to flash.
2. Continue to hold both buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light turns off.
3. Release both buttons.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at 1-800-355-3515, or on the internet at www.homelink.com.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Storage Areas

## Glove Box

Use the key to lock and unlock the glove box. To open, lift the latch.

## Center Console Storage Area

The console has cupholders and a cassette tape storage area. To open the console's storage area, press the latch located toward the front of the console lid on the driver's side of the vehicle.

## Rear Storage Area

To access the rear cupholders, pull down on the cloth strap located toward the top of the center back seat cushion. You will then have access to the dual cupholders.

## Convenience Net

Your vehicle may have a convenience net. You'll see it on the back wall of the trunk.

Put small loads, like grocery bags, behind or inside the net. It can help keep them from falling over during sharp turns or quick starts and stops.

The net isn't for larger, heavier loads. Store those in the trunk as far forward as you can.

You can unhook the net so that it will lie flat when you're not using it.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Sunroof

Your vehicle may have an express-open sunroof. It includes a sliding and tilting glass panel and a sunshade.

The switch is located on the overhead console if the vehicle is equipped with a Driver Information Center (DIC). If the vehicle is not equipped with a DIC, the sunroof switch is located on the roof panel headliner.

**DIC Version Shown**

To open the power sunroof, press the switch to the rear twice and the sunroof will open.

The switch works only when the ignition is in ACC, ON or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active.

**Open/Express:** To activate the express-open feature, press the switch rearward. You can stop the sunroof before it is completely open by pushing the switch forward.

**Vent:** Your sunroof also has a vent feature. It can be activated from the closed sunroof position by pressing the switch once rearward. To close, push and hold the sunroof switch forward. When using this feature, the sunshade should be fully opened in the rear position.

The sunshade can be opened manually by sliding it rearward, or automatically, by opening the power sunroof. You will need to close the sunshade manually by sliding it forward.

**Close:** To close the sunroof, push the switch forward and hold until the sunroof motor stops, or release the switch when the desired position has been reached.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Vehicle Personalization

Some of the convenience features can be reset or customized to perform according to your preference. The features you can program depend upon the options that came with your vehicle. The following list shows features that can be reset or customized along with those options.

- Settings (Available for All)
- GM Oil Life System Reset (Available for All)
- Low Tire Pressure Reset
- Delayed Headlamp Illumination (Available for All)
- Automatic Door Lock and Unlock (Available for All)
- Remote Visual Verification (Available with Remote Keyless Entry)
- Remote Audible Verification (Available with Remote Keyless Entry)
- Content Theft Operation (Available with Content Theft System)
- Trunk Jamb (Available with Content Theft System)
- Horn Chirp On Timer (Available with Remote Keyless Entry)
- Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter Programming (Available with Remote Keyless Entry)
- Return to Original Factory Settings (Available for All)
- Exit Vehicle Customization Mode

## Programming Mode

To reset or customize the features, first enter the vehicle customization main menu. To enter the main menu, do the following:

1. Turn the ignition to ACC or ON. The radio must be off.
2. Press and hold the TUNE DISP knob on the radio for at least five seconds until SETTINGS is displayed.
3. Press the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows to scroll through each available feature on your main menu.
4. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons to scroll through the lower menu. An asterisk (*) will appear next to the item that is the current setting.

The following information shows how to reset or customize features after entering the main menu.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## SETTINGS (Display Current Settings)

This displays all current settings.

## OIL LIFE (GM Oil Life System Reset)

This feature allows you to reset the GM Oil Life System Monitor after an oil change. See *Engine Oil on page 5-18*. Be careful not to reset the OIL LIFE system at any time other than when the oil has been changed. To clear the CHANGE ENGINE OIL light from the instrument panel cluster and reset the oil life system, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until OIL LIFE appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. RESET will then be displayed.
3. Press the TUNE DISP knob to reset. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting and DONE will be displayed for one second.

The CHANGE ENGINE OIL light is now reset. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## TIRE MON (Tire Inflation Monitor Reset)

This feature allows you to reset the tire pressure monitor after checking all tire pressures. See *Tires on page 5-65*. To clear the LOW TIRE PRESSURE light from the instrument panel cluster and reset the low tire pressure monitor, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until TIRE MON appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. RESET will be displayed.
3. Press the TUNE DISP button to reset. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting and DONE will be displayed for one second.

The low tire pressure monitor is now reset. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## LT DELAY (Delayed Headlamp Illumination)

This feature allows the vehicle's headlamps and parking lamps to stay on for a fixed amount of time after you exit the vehicle, or for them to turn off immediately.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** OFF

**Mode 2:** 30 SEC

**Mode 3:** 60 SEC

Your vehicle was originally programmed to Mode 2. The mode may have been changed since then. To determine the current mode, or to change the mode, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until LT DELAY appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. The current selection will have an asterisk (*) next to it. If you do not wish to change the current mode, you can either exit the programming mode by following the directions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.
3. Scroll, using the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons, through the modes to change the current mode.
4. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

The mode you selected is now set. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## AUTOLOCK (Automatic Door Lock and Unlock)

With the ignition in ON and the vehicle's doors closed, this feature allows for the vehicle doors to automatically lock and unlock when the driver shifts the vehicle's transaxle into and out of PARK (P), or to turn the feature off.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** OFF

**Mode 2:** LCK ONLY – Automatic door lock on/automatic door unlock off.

**Mode 3:** DRVR UNL – Automatic door lock on/automatic door unlock on (driver's door only).

**Mode 4:** ALL UNL – Automatic door lock on/automatic door unlock on.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle was originally programmed to Mode 4. The mode may have been changed since then. To determine the current mode, or to change the mode, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until AUTOLOCK appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. The current selection will have an asterisk (*) next to it. If you do not wish to change the current mode, you can either exit the programming mode by following the directions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.
3. Scroll, using the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons, through the modes to change the current mode.
4. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

The mode you selected is now set. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## FOB LIGHT (Remote Visual Verification)

This feature allows the exterior lights to flash when the remote keyless entry transmitter is used to lock or unlock the vehicle, or to program no verification.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** OFF

**Mode 2:** On – One flash for each remote lock/two flashes for each remote unlock.

Your vehicle was originally programmed to Mode 2. The mode may have been changed since then. To determine the current mode, or to change the mode, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until FOB LIGHT appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. The current selection will have an asterisk (*) next to it. If you do not wish to change the current mode, you can either exit the programming mode by following the directions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Scroll, using the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons, through the modes to change the current mode.
4. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

If your vehicle has the optional content theft-deterrent system, the first time a remote UNLOCK command is received, three flashes will be seen and three horn chirps heard to indicate an alarm condition has occurred since last arming. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-15*.

The mode you selected is now set. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## FOB HORN (Remote Audible Verification)

This feature allows the horn to chirp when the remote keyless entry transmitter is used to lock or unlock the vehicle, or to program no verification.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** OFF

**Mode 2:** PARTIAL – One chirp for each remote LOCK command/no chirp for remote UNLOCK command.

**Mode 3:** FULL – One chirp for each remote LOCK command/two chirps for the first remote UNLOCK command.

Your vehicle was originally programmed to Mode 2. The mode may have been changed since then. To determine the current mode, or to change the mode, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until FOB HORN appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. The current selection will have an asterisk (*) next to it. If you do not wish to change the current mode, you can either exit the programming mode by following the directions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Scroll, using the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons, through the modes to change the current mode.
4. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

If your vehicle has the optional content theft-deterrent system, the first time a remote UNLOCK command is received, three flashes will be seen and three horn chirps heard to indicate an alarm condition has occurred since last arming. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-15*.

The mode you selected is now set. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## ALARM (Content Theft Operation)

This feature allows the content theft-deterrent system to be turned on or off.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** ALRM OFF

**Mode 2:** ALRM ON

Before your vehicle was shipped from the factory, it was programmed to Mode 2. The mode to which your vehicle was programmed may have been changed since it left the factory. To determine the mode to which your vehicle is programmed or to program your vehicle to a different mode, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until ALARM appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. The current selection will have an asterisk (*) next to it. If you do not wish to change the current mode, you can either exit the programming mode by following the directions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.
3. Scroll, using the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons, through the modes to change the current mode.
4. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

The mode you selected is now set. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## TRNKJAMB (Trunk Jamb)

This feature allows the content theft system trunk lock sensor to be disabled or enabled.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** TRNK OFF

**Mode 2:** TRNK ON

Your vehicle was originally programmed to Mode 2. The mode may have been changed since then. To determine the current mode, or to change the mode, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until TRNKJAMB appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. The current selection will have an asterisk (*) next to it. If you do not wish to change the current mode, you can either exit the programming mode by following the directions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.
3. Scroll, using the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons, through the modes to change the current mode.
4. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

The mode you selected is now set. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## CHIRP (Horn Chirp Timer)

This feature allows you to choose between short or long horn chirp sounds when the remote keyless entry transmitter is used.

### Programmable Modes

**Mode 1:** SHORT

**Mode 2:** LONG



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle was originally programmed to Mode 1. The mode may have been changed since then. To determine the current mode, or to change the mode, do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until CHIRP appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. The current selection will have an asterisk (*) next to it. If you do not wish to change the current mode, you can either exit the programming mode by following the directions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.
3. Scroll, using the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons, through the modes to change the current mode.
4. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

The mode you selected is now set. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## ORIG. SET (Return to the Original Settings)

This feature allows you to return all customization feature settings back to their original factory settings. To reset do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until ORIG. SET appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. SET ALL will appear.
3. With your preference displayed, press the TUNE DISP button to select. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting. The new selection will be displayed with an asterisk (*) for one second.

The original factory settings are now reset. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## FOB PROG (Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter Programming)

This feature allows you to match the remote keyless entry transmitter to your vehicle. To match the transmitter do the following:

1. Scroll, using the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrows, until FOB PROG appears on the display.
2. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. BEGIN will be displayed.
3. Press the TUNE DISP button to start programming. When the message PUSH FOB flashes, press and hold the LOCK and UNLOCK buttons on the first transmitter at the same time for 15 seconds. A chime will be heard to verify the transmitter is learned.
4. Repeat Step 3 for each additional transmitter.

The transmitter is programmed now. You can either exit the programming mode by following the instructions later in this section or program the next feature available on your vehicle.

## EXIT (Exit Feature Customization Mode)

This feature allows you to exit the vehicle customization programming. To exit do the following:

- Scroll until EXIT appears on the display.
- Press the TUNE DISP button to exit programming. A chime will be heard to verify the exit.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 3 Instrument Panel

**Instrument Panel Overview** .....3-3
Hazard Warning Flashers .....3-5
Other Warning Devices .....3-5
Horn .....3-6
Tilt Wheel .....3-6
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever .....3-6
Cruise Control .....3-10
Exterior Lamps .....3-13
Interior Lamps .....3-15
Accessory Power Outlets .....3-18
Ashtrays and Cigarette Lighter .....3-19

**Climate Controls** .....3-20
Dual Climate Control System .....3-20
Passenger Compartment Air Filter .....3-26

**Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators** .....3-27
Instrument Panel Cluster .....3-28
Speedometer and Odometer .....3-31
Tachometer .....3-32
Safety Belt Reminder Light .....3-32
Air Bag Readiness Light .....3-33
Voltmeter Gage .....3-34
Brake System Warning Light .....3-34
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light .....3-36
Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light ...3-36
Engine Coolant Temperature Gage .....3-37
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....3-38
Oil Pressure Indicator Light .....3-40

Cruise Control Light .....3-41
Fuel Gage .....3-42

**Message Center** .....3-43
Service Traction System Warning Message .....3-43
Traction Active Message .....3-43
Battery Warning Message .....3-44
Hot Coolant Temperature Warning Message .....3-44
Low Oil Pressure Message .....3-45
Low Engine Oil Level Message .....3-45
Change Engine Oil Message .....3-46
Low Tire Message .....3-46
Door Ajar Warning Message .....3-47
Trunk Ajar Warning Message .....3-47
Security Message .....3-48
Low Washer Fluid Warning Message .....3-48
Low Fuel Warning Message .....3-49
Low Brake Fluid Warning Message .....3-49
Service Vehicle Soon Message .....3-50
Highbeam Out Warning Message .....3-50



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 3 Instrument Panel

**Driver Information Center (DIC)** .....3-51
**Trip Computer** .....3-53
**Audio System(s)** .....3-54
Setting the Time .....3-54
Radio with Cassette .....3-55
Radio with CD .....3-66
Radio with Cassette and CD .....3-77
Theft-Deterrent Feature .....3-90
Audio Steering Wheel Controls .....3-91
Understanding Radio Reception .....3-92
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player .....3-92
Care of Your CDs .....3-93
Care of Your CD Player .....3-94
Backglass Antenna .....3-94
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System (48 Contiguous US States) .....3-95
Vehicle Customization Settings .....3-95
Chime Level Adjustment .....3-95



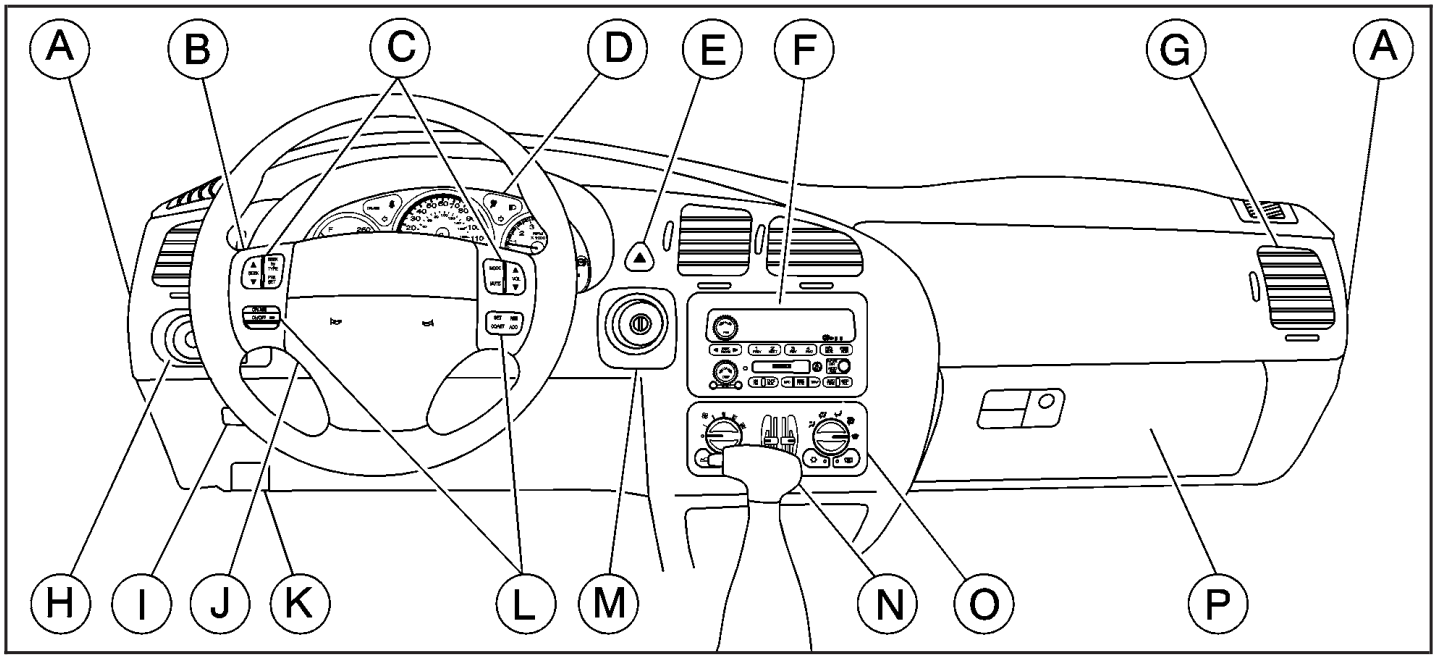
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ✍ NOTES



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Instrument Panel Overview






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The main components of your instrument panel are listed here:

A. Instrument Panel Fuse Block. See “Instrument Panel Fuse Block” under *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*.

B. Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*.

C. Audio Steering Wheel Controls (If Equipped). See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-92*.

D. Instrument Panel Cluster. See *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-29*.

E. Hazard Warning Flasher Button. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.

F. Audio System. See *Audio System(s) on page 3-55*.

G. Air Outlet. See “Outlet Adjustment” under *Dual Climate Control System on page 3-21*.

H. Exterior Lamps Control. See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-14*.

I. Remote Trunk Release. See “Remote Trunk Release” under *Trunk on page 2-10*.

J. Tilt Steering Wheel Lever. See *Tilt Wheel on page 3-7*.

K. Hood Release. See *Hood Release on page 5-10*.

L. Steering Wheel Cruise Contol (If Equipped). See *Cruise Control on page 3-11*.

M. Ignition Switch. See “Ignition Positions” under *New Vehicle Break-In on page 2-17*.

N. Automatic Transaxle Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transaxle Operation on page 2-21*.

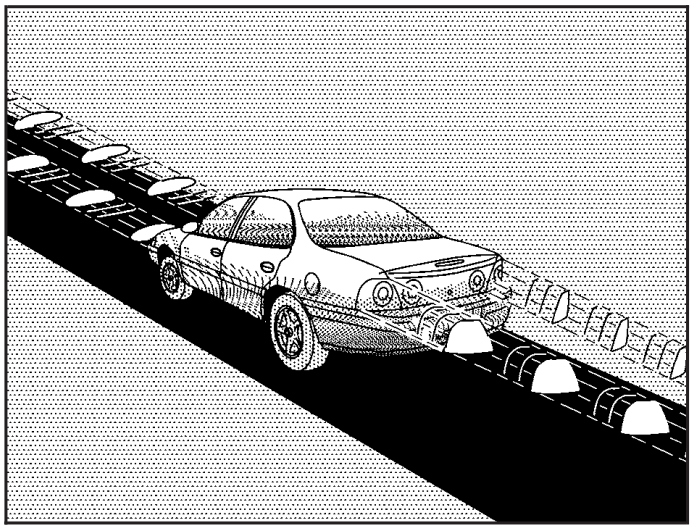
O. Climate Controls. See *Dual Climate Control System on page 3-21*.

P. Glove Box. See *Glove Box on page 2-40*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Hazard Warning Flashers



Your hazard warning flashers let you warn others. They also let police know you have a problem. Your front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.

The hazard warning flasher button is located to the right of the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

The hazard warning flashers work no matter what position your key is in, and even if the key isn't in.

Press the button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press the button again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, your turn signals won't work.

## Other Warning Devices

If you carry reflective triangles, you can set one up at the side of the road about 300 feet (100 m) behind your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Horn

Press near or on the horn symbols on your steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

## Tilt Wheel

A tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can raise the steering wheel to the highest level to give your legs more room when you exit and enter. The lever to adjust it is located on the left side of the steering column.

To adjust the wheel, hold the steering wheel and pull the lever. Move the steering wheel to a comfortable level, then release the lever to lock the wheel into place.

## Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever

The lever located on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

- Turn Signal and Lane-Change Signals
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer
- Flash-to-Pass Feature
- Windshield Wipers
- Windshield Washer

For information on the exterior lamps, see “Exterior Lamps” later in this section.

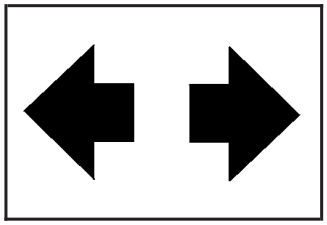


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The turn signal has two upward (for right) and two downward (for left) positions. These positions allow you to signal a turn or a lane change.

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up or down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically.



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

To signal a lane change, raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash. Hold it there until you complete your lane change. The lever will return by itself when you release it.

If the arrow flashes faster than normal as you signal a turn or a lane change, a signal bulb may be burned out and other drivers won't see your turn signal.

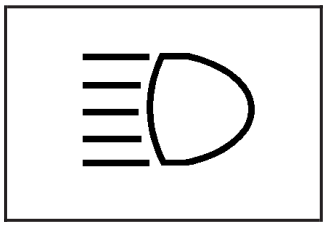
If a bulb is burned out, replace it to help avoid an accident. If the arrows don't go on at all when you signal a turn, check for burned-out bulbs and then check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*.

### Turn Signal On Chime

If you leave either one of your turn signals on and drive more than 3/4 mile (1.2 km), a chime will sound to alert you.

## Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

To change your headlamps from low beams to high beams, or from high to low, pull the multifunction lever all the way toward you. Then release it.



While the high beams are on, this light will appear on the instrument panel cluster.

This light works only while the key is in ON. The fog lamps (if equipped) are not illuminated when the high beams are on.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Flash-to-Pass Feature

With the turn signal lever in the low-beam position, pull the lever toward you momentarily to switch to high-beam, (to signal you are going to pass).

If the headlamps are on, they will return to low-beam when the lever is released. This feature operates even if the headlamps are off.

## Windshield Wipers

The windshield wipers will operate when the ignition is in ACC or ON.

**WIPER:** To operate the windshield wipers, turn the band labeled WIPER, located on the multifunction lever, upward or downward.

**OFF:** To stop the wipers, turn the band to OFF.

The five marks between OFF and LO are delay settings. For a longer delay between wiping cycles, turn the band downward. For a shorter delay between wiping cycles turn the band upward.

**LO (Low Speed):** Turn the band upward to LO for steady wiping at a low speed.

**HI (High Speed):** Turn the band upward to HI for steady wiping at high speed.

**MIST:** Turn the band downward to MIST for a single wiping cycle. Hold the band at this setting until the windshield wipers start, then release it. The windshield wipers will stop after one wipe. If additional cycles are needed, hold the band on MIST longer.

Be sure to clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they're frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. If your blades become damaged, get new blades or blade inserts.

Heavy snow or ice can overload your wipers. A circuit breaker will stop them until the motor cools. Clear away snow or ice to prevent an overload. If your blades become damaged, get new blades or blade inserts. See *Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-64* for more information.



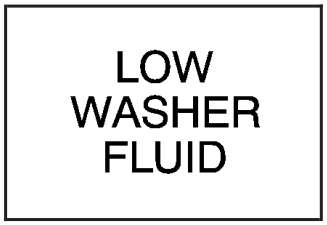
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Windshield Washer

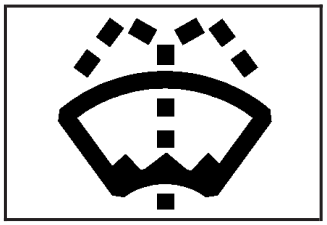
At the top of the multifunction lever, there's a paddle with the windshield washer symbol and the word PUSH on it. To spray washer fluid on the windshield, push the paddle. The wipers will run for several sweeps and then either stop or return to your preset speed. The ignition key must be in ACC or ON for this to work. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-48*.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.**




**United States**



**Canada**

When you are low on washer fluid, the LOW WASHER FLUID message will be illuminated in the message center for 60 seconds. When the ignition is turned off, this message will appear again for three seconds as a reminder that the fluid level is low.

Until the fluid tank is refilled, every time you start your vehicle, the LOW WASHER FLUID message will be illuminated in the message center for 60 seconds. Be sure to check the fluid level and refill the tank right away.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cruise Control

If your vehicle is equipped with cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

When you apply your brakes, the cruise control shuts off.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

- **Cruise control can be dangerous where you can not drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.**
- **Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause needless wheel spinning, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.**

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system (optional) begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-10* Traction Control System (TCS). When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may turn the cruise control back on.

### Setting Cruise Control

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Push the CRUISE ON/OFF button located on the steering wheel to turn the cruise control on.
2. Get up to the speed you want.
3. Press SET located on your steering wheel and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator.

The CRUISE light on the instrument panel cluster will come on after the cruise control has been set to the desired speed.

## Resuming a Set Speed

Suppose you set your cruise control at a desired speed and then you apply the brake. This, of course shuts off the cruise control. But you don't need to reset it.

Once you're going about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, press RES (Resume) on your steering wheel. You'll go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed. Press SET on the steering wheel, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. You'll now cruise at the higher speed.
- Press ACC (Accelerate) on the steering wheel. Hold it there until you get up to the speed you want and then release the button. To increase your speed in very small amounts, press ACC briefly and then release it. Each time you do this, your vehicle will go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

The accelerate feature will only work after you set the cruise control speed by pressing SET on the steering wheel.

## Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to reduce your speed while using cruise control:

- Press COAST on the steering wheel until you reach the lower speed you want, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, press COAST on the steering wheel briefly. Each time you do this, you'll go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

## Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle will slow down to the cruise speed you set earlier.

## Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you may have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brake takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and don't use cruise control on steep hills.

## Ending Cruise Control

There are two ways to cancel the cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press CRUISE ON/OFF on the steering wheel.

## Erasing Speed Memory

When you turn off the cruise control or the ignition, your cruise control set speed memory is erased.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Exterior Lamps

The exterior lamps control is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

It controls the following systems:

- Headlamps
- Taillamps
- Parking Lamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

The exterior lamps control has three positions:

**Off:** Push the control all the way in to turn off the exterior lamps.

**Parking Lamps:** Pull the control out halfway to turn on the parking lamps together with the following:

- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

**Headlamps:** Pulling the control all the way out turns on the headlamps together with the previously listed lamps and lights. See *Interior Lamps on page 3-16* for information on the instrument panel brightness control and on the dome lamps. A warning chime will sound if you open the driver's door when the ignition switch is off and the headlamps are on.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Daytime Running Lamps / Automatic Headlamp System

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

A light sensor on top of the instrument panel makes the DRL work, so be sure it isn't covered.

The DRL system's automatic headlamp control will make your high-beam headlamps come on at a reduced brightness when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on,
- the exterior lamps control is off and
- the gearshift is not in PARK (P).

When the DRL are on, only your high-beam headlamps, at a reduced level of brightness, will be on. The headlamps, taillamps, sidemarker and other lamps won't be on. Your instrument panel and cluster won't be lit up either.

When it's dark enough outside, your high-beam headlamps will turn off and the headlamps and parking lamps will turn on. The other lamps that come on with your headlamps will also come on.

When it's bright enough outside, your headlamps will go off and your DRL will come on.

As with any vehicle, you should turn on the regular headlamps system when you need it.

## Delayed Headlamps

The delayed headlamps feature provides a period of exterior lighting as you leave the area around your vehicle. The feature is activated when the headlamps are on due to the automatic headlamps control feature later described in this section, and when the ignition is turned off. Your headlamps will then remain on until the exterior lamps control is moved to the parking lamps position or until either a 30 second or 60 second lighting period has ended.

If you turn off the ignition with the headlamps switch in the parking lamps or headlamps position, the delayed headlamps cycle will not occur.

To disable the delayed headlamps feature or change the time of delay, see *Vehicle Customization Settings on page 3-96*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Fog Lamps

If your vehicle has this feature, the fog lamps button is located on the instrument panel next to the exterior lamps control wheel to the left of the steering column.

To turn the fog lamps on, press the FOG button. A light will glow in the button to let you know that the fog lamps are on. Press the FOG button again to turn the fog lamps off.

The ignition must be in ON and your parking lamps must be on for your fog lamps to work.

The fog lamps will go off while you change to high-beam headlamps.

# Interior Lamps

## Instrument Panel Brightness

The knob for the instrument panel light is located on the exterior lamps control. Pull the knob out halfway and then turn the knob clockwise to brighten or counterclockwise to dim the lights.

## Courtesy Lamps

When a door is opened, the courtesy lamps automatically come on. They make it easy for you to enter and leave your vehicle. You can also manually turn these lamps on by turning the exterior lamps control clockwise all the way to DOME.

The reading lamps, located on the rearview mirror, can be turned on or off independent of the automatic courtesy lamps, when the doors are closed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Entry Lighting

Your vehicle may have the entry lighting feature. Your courtesy lamps will come on and stay on for a set time whenever you press UNLOCK on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

If you open a door, the lamps will stay on while it's open and then turn off automatically about 25 seconds after you close it. If you press UNLOCK and don't open a door, the lamps will turn off after about 40 seconds.

Illuminated entry includes a feature called theater dimming. With theater dimming, the lamps don't just turn off at the end of the delay time. Instead, they slowly dim after the delay time until they go out. The delay time is canceled if you turn the ignition key to ON or press the power door lock switch.

When the ignition is on, illuminated entry is inactive, which means the courtesy lamps won't come on unless a door is opened.

## Delayed Entry Lighting

Delayed entry lighting illuminates the interior for a period of time after all the doors have been closed.

The ignition must be off for delayed entry lighting to work. Immediately after both doors have been closed, the delayed entry lighting feature will continue to work until one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is moved to ON,
- the doors are locked or
- an illumination period of 25 seconds has elapsed.

If during the illumination period a door is opened, the timed illumination period will be canceled and the interior lamps will remain on.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Delayed Exit Lighting

This feature illuminates the interior for a period of time after the key is removed from the ignition.

The vehicle's ignition must be off for delayed exit lighting to work.

When the key is removed, interior illumination will activate and remain on until one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is moved to ON,
- the power door locks are activated or
- an illumination period of 25 seconds has elapsed.

If during the illumination period a door is opened, the timed illumination period will be canceled and the interior lamps will remain on.

## Parade Dimming

The instrument panel has an added feature called parade dimming. This feature prohibits the dimming of your instrument panel displays during the daylight while the headlamps are on so that you'll still be able to see the displays.

## Reading Lamps

The reading lamps are located on the rearview mirror. These lamps and the interior courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened. Press the button to turn them on and off while the doors are closed.

## Dome Lamp

The dome lamp will come on when you open a door. You can also turn this lamp on by turning the exterior lamp control clockwise to DOME.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Battery Rundown Protection

Your vehicle has a feature to help prevent you from draining the battery in case you accidentally leave on the interior courtesy lamps, reading/map lamps, visor vanity lamps, trunk lamp or glove box lamps. If you leave any of these lamps on, they will automatically turn off after 10 minutes, if the ignition is off. The lamps won't come back on again until you do the following:

- Turn the ignition on or
- turn the exterior lamps control off, then on again.

If your vehicle has less than 15 miles (25 km) on the odometer, the battery saver will turn off the lamps after only three minutes.

Battery rundown protection will also work if the headlamps are left on. After having been left on for 10 minutes, the headlamps and the parking lamps will flash three times. They will remain on for one more minute before turning off automatically.

## Accessory Power Outlets

Your vehicle has a 12-volt outlet which can be used to plug in electrical equipment such as a cellular telephone, a compact disc player, etc.

It is located at the rear of the console.

Lift the cover to access the outlet. When not using the outlet, make sure the protective cover is in place.

***Notice:*** **Leaving electrical equipment on for extended periods will drain the battery. Always turn off electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum amperage rating.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Certain accessory power plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem see your dealer for additional information on the accessory power plugs.

***Notice:*** **Adding any electrical equipment to your vehicle may damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.**

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. Check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment, and never use anything that exceeds the amperage rating.

***Notice:*** **Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.**

## Ashtrays and Cigarette Lighter

***Notice:*** **If you put papers or other flammable items in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage your vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

Your vehicle may have a cigarette lighter and ashtray located on the console. The ashtray is removable and has a cupholder and liner underneath. To remove the ashtray, lift it up with the liner and pull it out.

***Notice:*** **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating will not allow the lighter to back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating may occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.**

To activate the cigarette lighter, push it into the heating element. When the lighter is ready it will pop out.

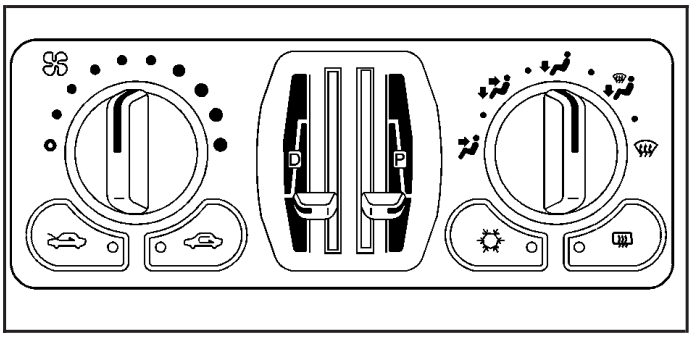


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Climate Controls

## Dual Climate Control System

With this system you can control the heating, cooling, defrost, defog and ventilation for your vehicle.




## Manual Operation

Turn the right knob clockwise or counterclockwise to direct the airflow inside of your vehicle.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

**(Vent):** This mode directs air to the instrument panel outlets.

**(Bi-Level):** This mode allows for approximately a 50/50 split of air to the instrument panel outlets and to the floor outlets.

**(Floor):** This mode directs most of the air to the floor outlets, with some of the air directed to the windshield and side window outlets. In this mode, the system will automatically select Outside Air.

The right knob can also be used to select defog or defrost mode. For information on defogging and defrosting, see “Defogging and Defrosting” later in this section.

By positioning the right knob between two modes, a combination of those two modes is selected.

It should be noted, that the air conditioning compressor will be engaged unless the outside temperature is 40° F (4°C) or below. Recirculation cannot be selected when in Floor Mode.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Selecting the Fan Speed

**(Fan):** Turn the left knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. Turn the knob to OFF to turn off the fan. The fan must be turned on for the air conditioning compressor to operate.

If the airflow seems low when the fan is at the highest setting, the passenger compartment air filter, if equipped, may need to be replaced. For more information, see *Passenger Compartment Air Filter on page 3-27* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

## Selecting Outside Air or Recirculation

The outside air mode is used to bring outside air into your vehicle; also use this mode to remove excess moisture from the inside of the windows. The recirculation mode is used to recirculate the air inside of your vehicle; also use this mode to help prevent outside odors and/or dust from entering your vehicle or to help heat or cool the air inside of your vehicle quickly.

**(Outside Air):** Press this button to turn the outside air mode on. When this button is pressed, an indicator light in the button will come on to let you know that it is activated. During daylight hours, you may have to adjust the instrument panel brightness control to the highest setting in order to see the indicator light. See *Interior Lamps on page 3-16* for more information. When this mode is on, outside air will circulate throughout your vehicle.

**(Recirculation):** Press this button to turn the recirculation mode on. When this mode is on, inside air and a small percentage of outside air will recirculate throughout your vehicle. This selection will reduce the entry of outside air and odors from entering your vehicle, it may also help heat or cool your vehicle more quickly. When this button is pressed, an indicator light in the button will also come on to let you know that it is activated. During daylight hours, you may have to adjust the instrument panel brightness control to the highest setting in order to see the indicator light. See *Interior Lamps on page 3-16* for more information. The recirculation mode can be used with vent and bi-level modes, but it cannot be used with floor, defog, defrost or outside air modes.

This system will default back to the outside air setting, so you will have to re-select this setting every time that you start the vehicle.

If the weather is cold and damp, the system may cause the windows to fog while using the recirculation mode. If the windows do start to fog, do the following:

1. Select the defog or defrost mode.
2. Select the temperature.
3. Select the highest fan speed.
4. Operate the system in the outside air mode, 4to help prevent a recurrence.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Heating

Adjust the air temperature by using the following levers:

**D (Driver):** Slide this lever up or down to raise or lower the temperature on the driver's side of the vehicle.

**P (Passenger):** Slide this lever up or down to raise or lower the temperature on the passenger's side of the vehicle.

To warm your vehicle on cold days, do the following:

1. Select the floor mode.
2. Select the warmest temperature.
3. Select the fan speed.
4. Select outside air mode, after the air has warmed, to prevent it from becoming too stale.

When it's cold outside 0°F (–18°C) or lower, use the engine coolant heater, if equipped, to provide warmer air faster to your vehicle. An engine coolant heater warms the coolant that the engine uses to provide heat to warm the inside of your vehicle. For more information, see *Engine Coolant Heater on page 2-20*.

## Cooling

On hot days, open the windows to let hot air escape; then close them. This helps to reduce the time it takes for your vehicle to cool down. It also helps the system to operate more efficiently.

**(Air Conditioning):** Press this button to turn the air-conditioning system on or off. When the system is on, an indicator light will come on and the system will begin to cool and dehumidify the air inside of your vehicle. During daylight hours, you may have to adjust the instrument panel brightness control to the highest setting in order to see the indicator light. See *Interior Lamps on page 3-16* for more information.

You may notice a slight change in engine performance when the air-conditioning compressor shuts off and turns on again. This is normal. The system is designed to make adjustments to help with fuel economy while still maintaining the selected temperature.

The Air Conditioning System removes moisture from the air, so you may notice a small amount of water dripping underneath your vehicle when idling or after turning off the engine.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For quicker cool down on hot days, do the following:

1. Select the vent mode.
2. Select A/C.
3. Select the recirculation mode.
4. Select the coolest temperature for both zones.
5. Select the highest fan speeds.

Using these settings together for long periods of time may cause the air inside of your vehicle to become too dry. To prevent this, after the air inside of your vehicle has cooled, switch to Outside Air.

On cool, but sunny days, the sun may warm the upper part of your body, but the lower part may not be warm enough. To remedy this, do the following:

1. Select the bi-level mode.
2. Select A/C.
3. Select the temperature.
4. Select the fan speed.

The air-conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so you may sometimes notice a small amount of water dripping underneath your vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

## Defogging and Defrosting

Fog on the inside of your windows is a result of high humidity (moisture) condensing on the cool window glass. This can be minimized if the climate control system is used properly.

There are two modes to choose from to clear fog or frost from your windshield. Use the defog mode to clear fog or moisture from the windows and warm the passengers. Use the defrost mode to quickly remove fog or frost from the windshield.

Turn the right knob clockwise or counterclockwise to select one of the following modes:

**(Defog):** This mode directs half of the air to the windshield and side window vents and half to the floor vents. In this mode, the system will automatically force outside air into your vehicle. The recirculation mode cannot be selected while in the defog mode. The air conditioning compressor will run automatically in this setting, unless the outside temperature is below 40°F (4°C).

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**(Defrost):** This mode directs most of the air to the windshield and the side window vents, with only a little air directed to the floor vents. In this mode, the system will automatically force outside air into your vehicle. There is a 5 minute timer linked to this function. The recirculation mode cannot be selected while in the defrost mode. The air conditioning compressor will run automatically in this setting, unless the outside temperature is below 40°F (4°C).

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

To circulate outside air and clear the windshield quickly and bring outside air into your vehicle, do the following:

1. Select defrost mode.
2. Select the temperature.
3. Select the highest fan speed.

## Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

**:** Press this button to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light in the button will come on to let you know that the rear window defogger is activated. During daylight hours, you may have to adjust the instrument panel brightness control to the highest setting in order to see the indicator light. See *Interior Lamps on page 3-16* for more information.

The rear window defogger will turn off approximately 20 minutes after the button is pressed. If turned on again, the defogger will run for the same amount of time. The defogger can also be turned off by pressing the button again or by turning off the engine.

If your vehicle has heated outside rearview mirrors, the Rear Window Defogger also warms the heated driver's and passenger's outside rearview mirrors to help clear them of ice, snow and condensation.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

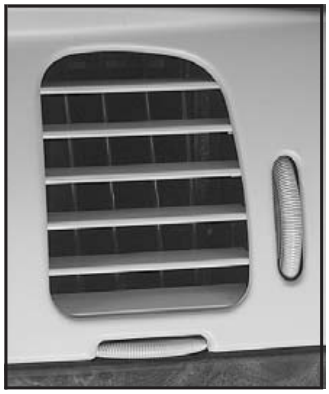
***Notice:*** **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window may damage the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not clear the inside of the rear window with sharp objects.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Outlet Adjustment

The flow through ventilation system on your vehicle allows outside air to enter your vehicle when it is moving. Outside air will also enter your vehicle when the air-conditioning compressor is running and even in small amounts when the recirculation mode is activated.



Use the control located below or to the side of the vent, to change the direction of the air flowing through them or to shut them off.

For mild outside temperatures when little heating or cooling is needed, do the following:

1. Select the vent mode.
2. Select outside air mode.
3. Select the temperature.
4. Select the fan speed.

## Ventilation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow or leaves from the air inlets on the hood that may block the flow of air into your vehicle. This will help to remove fog or frost from the windows it will also improve heating.
- Select the floor mode and set the fan at the highest speed when first starting your vehicle to help clear the air intake ducts of moisture or snow. This will also help to remove fog from the windows.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of your vehicle more effectively.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

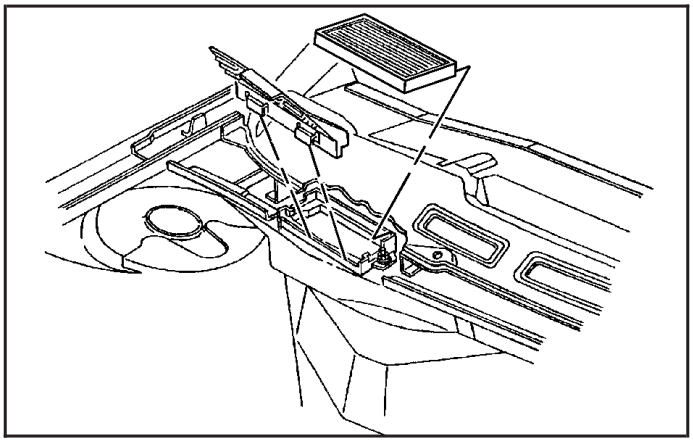
## Passenger Compartment Air Filter

Your vehicle may be equipped with a passenger compartment particulate air filter. It is located underneath the hood just below the windshield wiper arm on the passenger's side of the vehicle, underneath the air inlet grille.

The filter traps most of the pollen from air entering the Climate Control System. Like your engine's air cleaner/filter, it may need to be changed periodically to insure system performance. For information on how often to change the passenger compartment air filter, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

To change the passenger compartment air filter, use the following steps:

1. Turn off the ignition when the windshield wipers are in the up position.
2. Raise the vehicle hood.
3. Disconnect the windshield washer pump hose from the fender rail and air inlet grille.
4. Peel back the hood weatherstrip from the passenger's side of the vehicle halfway to center.



5. Remove the air inlet grille retainers.
6. Remove the air inlet grille.
7. Remove the air deflector grille in the compartment.
8. Remove the old passenger compartment air filter.
9. Reverse the steps to install the new air filter.

For the type of filter to use, see *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators

This part describes the warning lights and gages that may be on your vehicle. The pictures will help you locate them.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to your warning lights and gages could also save you or others from injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. As you will see in the details on the next few pages, some warning lights come on briefly when you start the engine just to let you know they're working. If you are familiar with this section, you should not be alarmed when this happens.

Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to let you know when there's a problem with your vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on when you are driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that tells you what to do about it. Please follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly – and even dangerous. So please get to know your warning lights and gages. They're a big help.

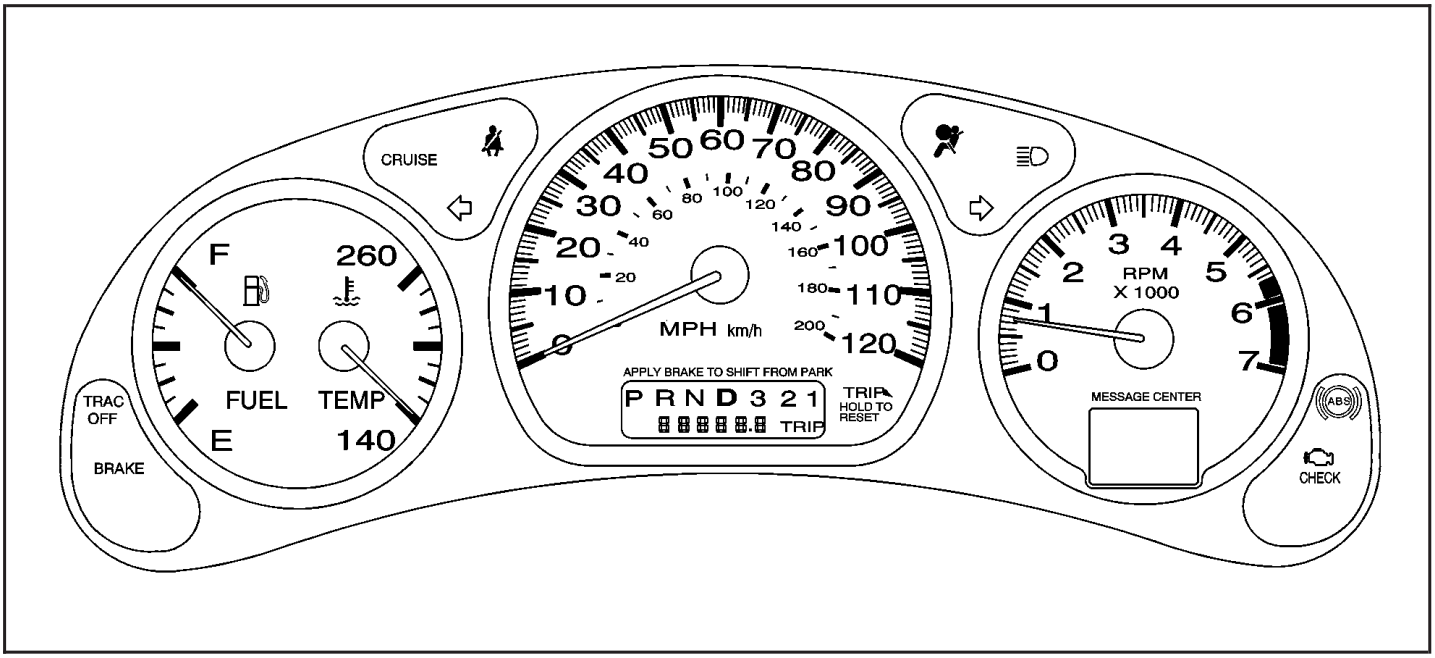
Your vehicle may also have a Driver Information Center (DIC) that works along with the warning lights and gages. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-52*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Instrument Panel Cluster

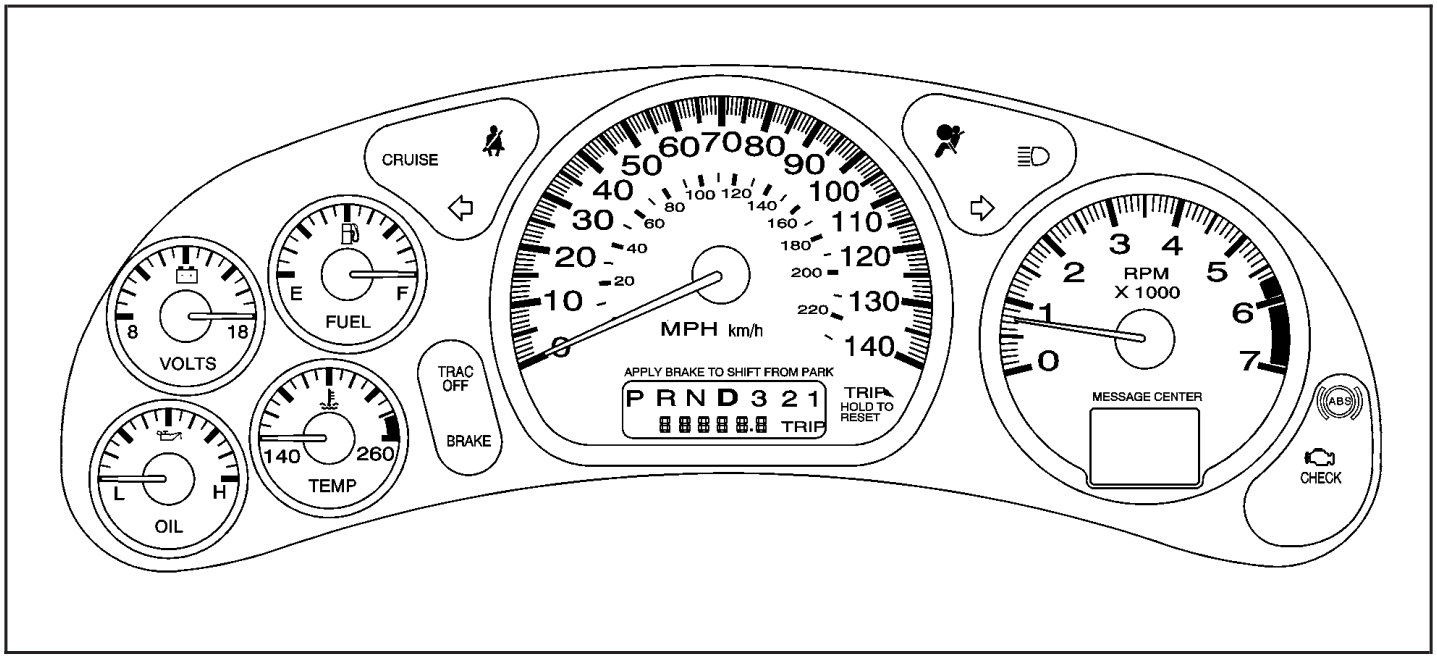
Your instrument panel cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running. You'll know how fast you're going, about how much fuel is in your tank and many other things you need to drive safely and economically.




**Uplevel 3400 V6 Engine Cluster: United States version with ABS and Traction Control shown, Canada similar**



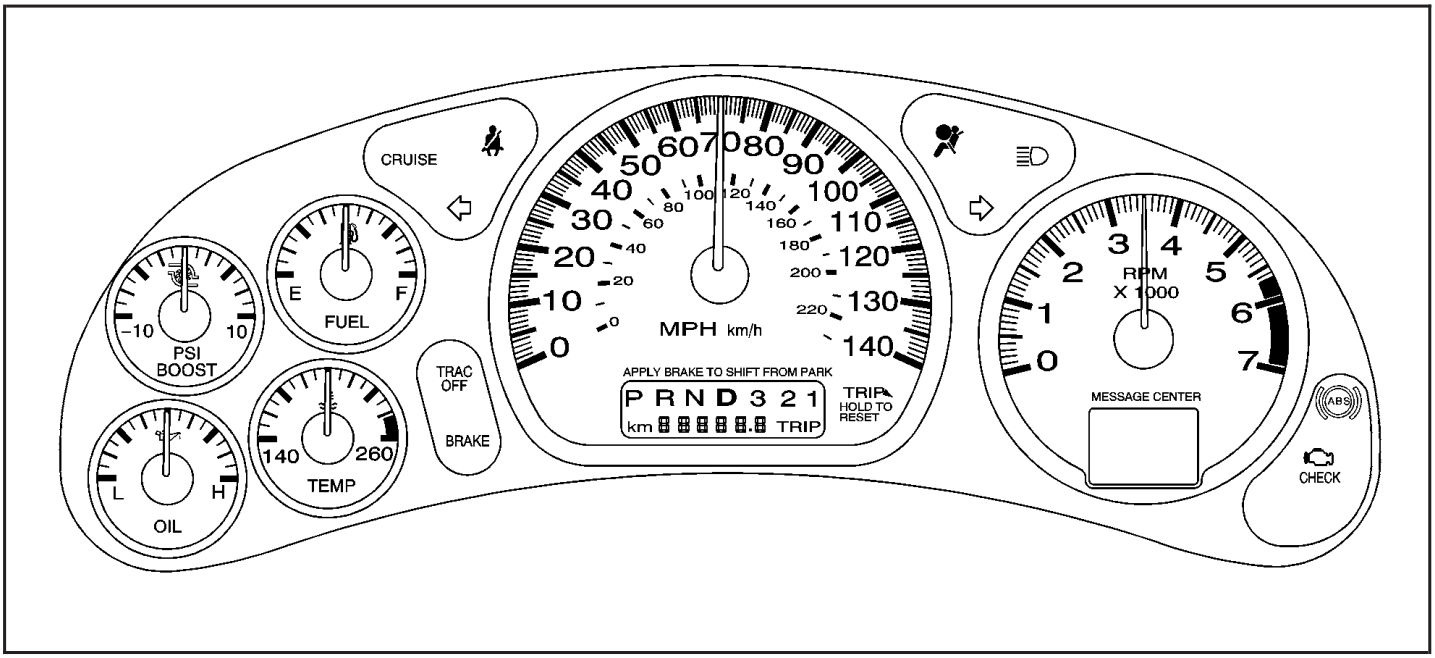
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**Uplevel 3800 V6 Engine Cluster: United States version with ABS and Traction Control shown, Canada similar**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**Uplevel 3800 Supercharged V6 Engine Cluster: United States version with ABS and Traction Control shown, Canada similar**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Speedometer and Odometer

Your speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h). Your odometer shows how far your vehicle has been driven in either miles (used in the United States) or in kilometers (used in Canada).

Your vehicle has a tamper-resistant odometer. If you see ERROR, you'll know someone has probably tampered with it and the numbers may not be accurate.

You may wonder what happens if your vehicle needs a new odometer installed. If the new one can be set to the mileage total of the old odometer, then that will be done. But if it can't, then it will be set at zero and a label must be put on the driver's door to show the old mileage reading when the new odometer was installed.

## Trip Odometer

Your trip odometer tells how far you have driven since you last reset it.

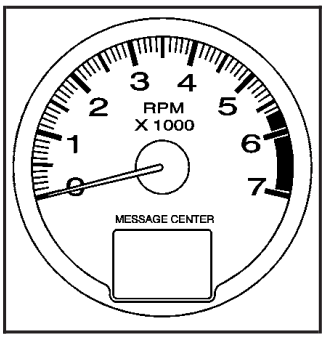
Your trip/select reset switch will go back and forth between the odometer and the trip odometer if the button is pressed and released within 1.5 seconds. If the button is pressed and held for longer than 1.5 seconds while in the trip odometer mode, it will be reset to zero. If the button is pressed and held for longer than 1.5 seconds while in the odometer mode, it will have no effect.

Your trip odometer will work no matter what position your key is in, and even if the key isn't in.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Tachometer




**The 3800 V6 Engine Shown**

The tachometer displays the engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

***Notice:*** **If you operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area, your vehicle could be damaged, and the damages would not be covered by your warranty. Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area.**

## Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the key is turned to ON, a chime will come on for about several seconds to remind people to fasten their safety belts, unless the driver's safety belt is already buckled.

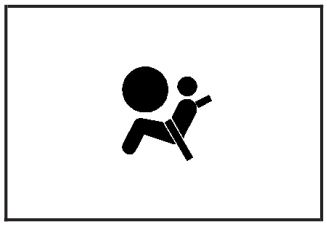
The safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Air Bag Readiness Light

There is an air bag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows the air bag symbol. The system checks the air bag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the air bag sensors, the air bag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the air bag system, see *Air Bag Systems on page 1-48*.



This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. Then the light should go out. This means the system is ready.

If the air bag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or comes on when you are driving, your air bag system may not work properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

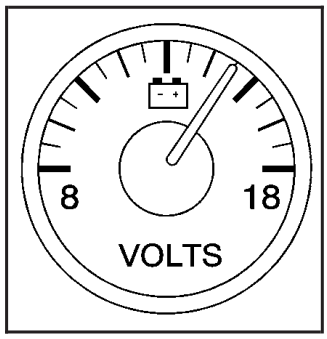
**If the air bag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, it means the air bag system may not be working properly. The air bags in your vehicle may not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have your vehicle serviced right away if the air bag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle.**

The air bag readiness light should flash for a few seconds when you turn the ignition key to ON. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Voltmeter Gage




If your vehicle is equipped with the 3800 V6 engine it has a voltmeter gage that indicates battery voltage.

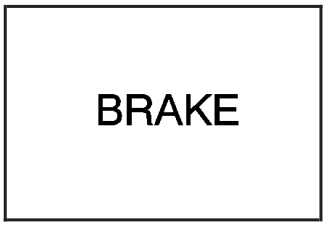
If the gage reads less than 12 volts or more than 16 volts while the engine is running, and it stays there, you may have a problem with the electrical charging system.

Also, when your gage reads less than 11 volts or more than 16 volts, your battery life indicator will be illuminated in the message center. For more information see *Battery Warning Message on page 3-45*.

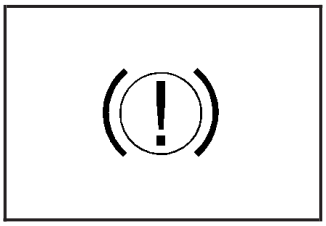
## Brake System Warning Light

Your vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part isn't working, the other part can still work and stop you. For good braking, though, you need both parts working well.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. The LOW BRAKE FLUID message in the message center will also appear when there is a brake problem. See *Low Brake Fluid Warning Message on page 3-50*. Have your brake system inspected right away.




**United States**



**Canada**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to ON. If it doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there's a problem.

When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will also come on when you set your parking brake. The light will stay on if your parking brake doesn't release fully. If it stays on after your parking brake is fully released, it means you have a brake problem.

If the light comes on while you are driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. You may notice that the pedal is harder to push. Or, the pedal may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-35* and *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-31*.

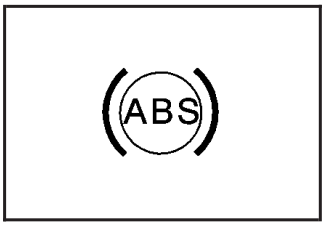
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you have pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light

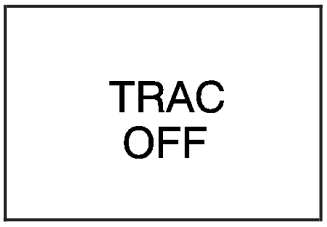



If your vehicle has ABS, the anti-lock brake system warning light will come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition key to ON.

If the anti-lock brake system warning light stays on longer than normal after you've started your engine, turn the ignition off. Or, if the light comes on and stays on when you're driving, stop as soon as possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the light still stays on, or comes on again while you're driving, the anti-lock brake system needs service and you don't have anti-lock brakes.

The anti-lock brake system warning light will come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to ON. This is normal. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

## Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light




If your vehicle has the traction control system, this warning light may come on for the following reasons:

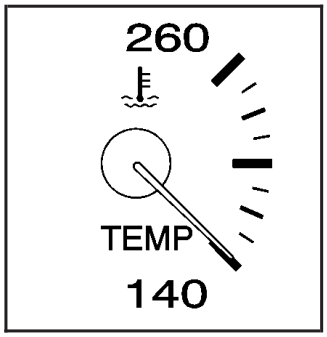
- If you turn the system off by pressing the TRAC OFF button located on the center console, a chime will sound and the warning light will come on and stay on. To turn the system back on, press the button again. The warning light should go off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-10* for more information.
- If there's a brake system problem that is specifically related to traction control, the traction control system will turn off and the warning light will come on. If your brakes begin to overheat, the traction control system will turn off and the warning light will come on until your brakes cool down.

If the traction control system warning light comes on and stays on for an extended period of time when the system is turned on, your vehicle needs service.

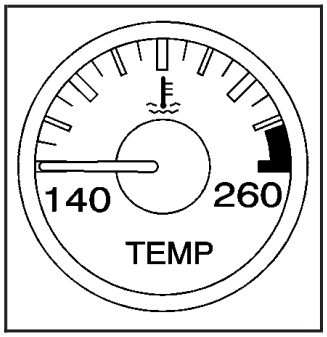


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

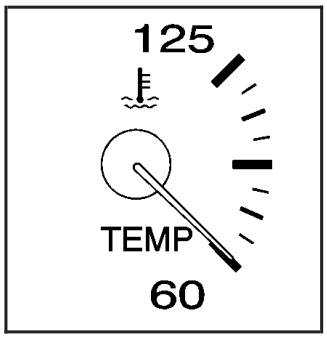
## Engine Coolant Temperature Gage



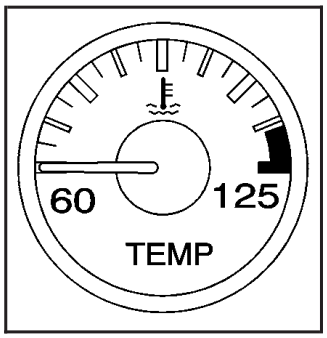

**United States-3400 V6 Engine Cluster**




**United States-3800 V6 Engine Cluster**




**Canada-3400 V6 Engine Cluster**




**Canada-3800 V6 Engine Cluster**

This gage shows the engine coolant temperature.

It also provides an indicator of how hard your vehicle is working. During the majority of the operation, the gage will read 210°F (100°C) or less.

If you are pulling a load or going up hills, it is normal for the temperature to fluctuate and approach the 250°F (122°C) mark. When the gage reads greater than 250°F (122°C), the HOT COOLANT TEMP light will be illuminated in the message center and a chime will sound continuously. If the gage reaches the 260°F (125°C) mark, it indicates that the cooling system is working beyond its capacity.

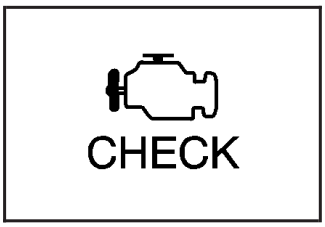
See *Engine Overheating on page 5-34*.



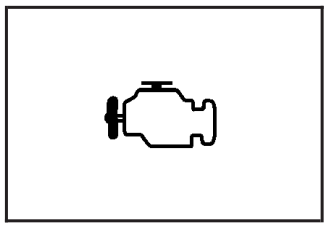
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp

### Check Engine Light




**United States**



**Canada**

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer which monitors operation of the fuel, ignition and emission control systems.

This system is called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) and is intended to assure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment. The CHECK ENGINE light comes on to indicate that there is a problem and service is required. Malfunctions often will be indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

***Notice:*** **If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after a while, your emission controls may not work as well, your fuel economy may not be as good and your engine may not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by your warranty.**

***Notice:*** **Modifications made to the engine, transaxle, exhaust, intake or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and may cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This may also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test.**

This light should come on, as a check to show you it is working, when the ignition is on and the engine is not running. If the light does not come on, have it repaired. This light will also come on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing** — A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and may damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.
- **Light On Steady** — An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## If the Light Is Flashing

The following may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reducing vehicle speed.
- Avoiding hard accelerations.
- Avoiding steep uphill grades.
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, *stop the vehicle.*

Find a safe place to park your vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps, and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

## If the Light Is on Steady

You also may be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling Your Tank on page 5-7*.

The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your electrical system may be wet. The condition will usually be corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-4*. Poor fuel quality will cause your engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You may notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration or stumbling on acceleration. (These conditions may go away once the engine is warmed up.) This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. Your dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that may have developed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

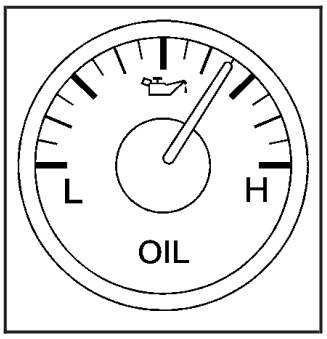
Some state/provincial and local governments have or may begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things you need to know to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the Check Engine light is on or not working properly.

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced your battery or if your battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This may take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, your GM dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

## Oil Pressure Indicator Light




**3800 V6 Engine**

The oil pressure indicator tells you if you have the correct oil pressure in your engine to operate your vehicle.

Under normal conditions the indicator should read slightly above the half way point.

If your oil pressure falls too low, the indicator will read at the low setting in the red zone.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOW
OIL
PRESSURE

**United States**

**Canada**

This message is displayed in the message center when the engine oil pressure is low. A chime will sound continuously, also.

If this occurs, you should have your vehicle serviced immediately.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.**

***Notice:*** **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance may damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.**

## Cruise Control Light

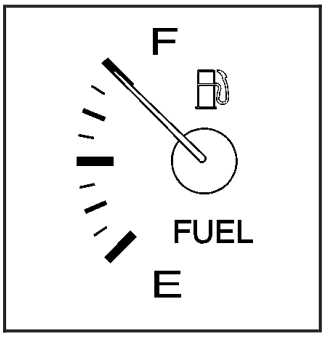
CRUISE

The CRUISE light comes on whenever you set your cruise control. See *Cruise Control on page 3-11*.

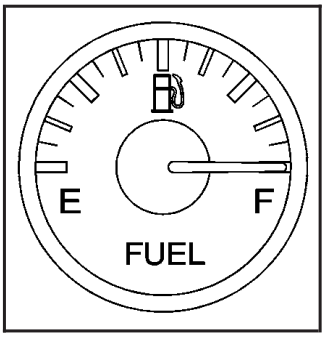


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

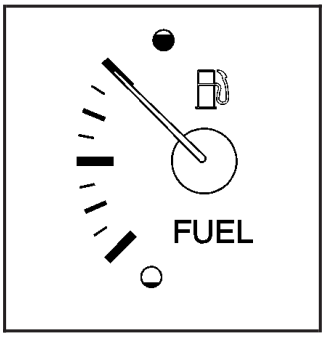
## Fuel Gage



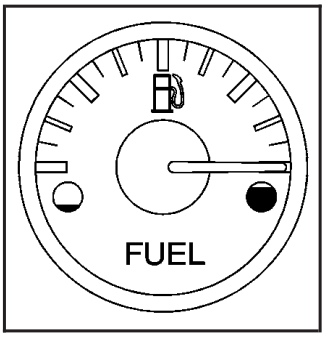

**United States-3400 V6 Engine Cluster**




**United States-3800 V6 Engine Cluster**




**Canada-3400 V6 Engine Cluster**




**Canada-3800 V6 Engine Cluster**

The fuel gage, when the ignition is on, tells you about how much fuel you have left in your tank.

The gage will first indicate empty before you are out of fuel, and you should get more fuel as soon as possible.

Here are four situations you may experience with your fuel gage. None of these indicate a problem with the fuel gage.

- At the gas station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the fuel gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage goes back to empty when you turn off the ignition.
- The gage pointer may move while cornering, braking or accelerating.

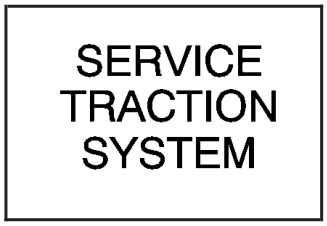


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

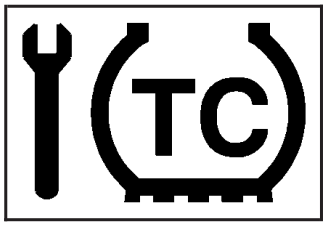
## Message Center

The message center is located below the tachometer gage on the instrument panel cluster. It gives you important safety and maintenance facts.

### Service Traction System Warning Message




**United States**




**Canada**

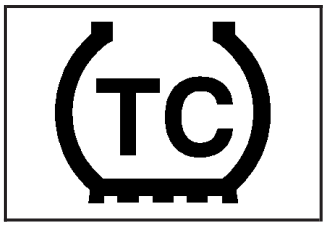
If your vehicle is equipped with the traction control system and this message appears when you are driving, there is a problem with your traction control system and your vehicle is in need of service.

When this message is displayed, the system will not limit wheel spin. The message will stay on for 60 seconds. Four chimes will also be heard. Adjust your driving accordingly.

When the ignition is turned off, this message will be displayed again for three seconds to remind you that your traction control system is not working properly. Be sure to have your vehicle serviced right away.

### Traction Active Message

**United States**




**Canada**

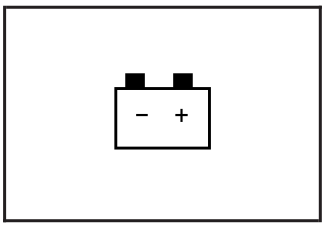
If your vehicle is equipped with the traction control system, this message will stay on a few seconds after the traction system stops limiting wheel spin.

This message will appear when the traction control system is limiting wheel spin.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Battery Warning Message



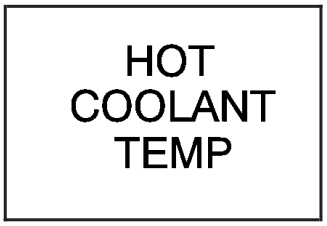

When the vehicle is started this message will be displayed for three seconds.

If the message is displayed when the engine is running, you may have a problem with your charging system. If there is a problem with the charging system, four chimes will sound when the message comes on. The battery display will also stay on while the key is in ON until the engine is started.

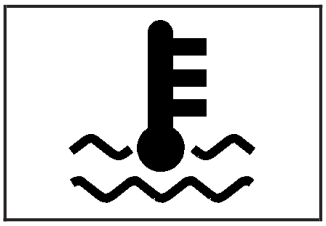
If the message stays on after starting the engine it could indicate a problem with the generator drive belt, or some other charging system problem. Have it checked right away. Driving with this message on could drain your battery.

If you must drive a short distance with this message displayed, it helps to turn off all your accessories.

## Hot Coolant Temperature Warning Message




**United States**



**Canada**

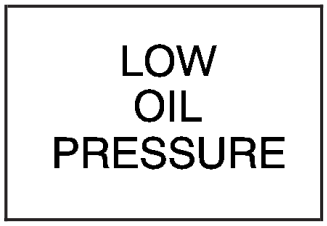
This message is displayed when the cooling system temperature gets hot. A chime will sound continuously, also.

Check the coolant temperature gage and the coolant level. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-31*, *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-38* and *Engine Overheating on page 5-34* for further information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Low Oil Pressure Message

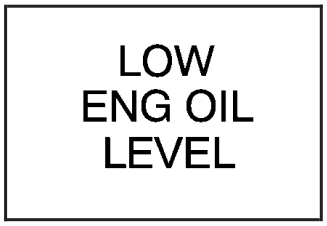



**United States**

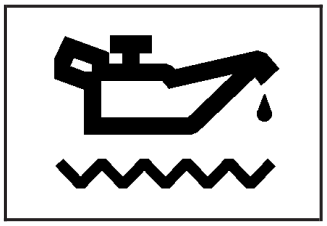
**Canada**

This message is displayed when the engine oil pressure is low. A chime will sound continuously, also. See Oil *Pressure Indicator Light on page 3-41*.

## Low Engine Oil Level Message




**United States**



**Canada**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a low engine oil level message.

This message is displayed for 60 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle when the engine oil level is low. Four chimes will also sound.

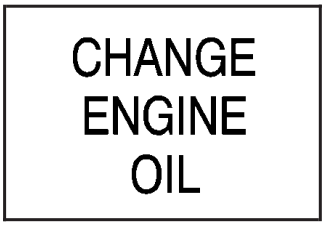
When the ignition is turned off, this message will be displayed again for three seconds to remind you that your engine oil level is low. Be sure to have your vehicle serviced right away.

See *Engine Oil on page 5-18* on how to check the oil level and for what type of oil to add.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Change Engine Oil Message




**United States**

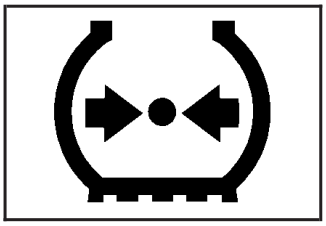
**Canada**

This message is displayed when the engine oil needs to be changed. It will appear for 60 seconds.

Once the engine oil has been changed, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message must be reset. Until it is reset, this message will be displayed for 60 seconds each time you start the engine. For more information on resetting the system, see “How to Reset the Change Engine Oil Message” under *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.

## Low Tire Message

**United States**



**Canada**

Your vehicle may be equipped with the tire pressure system which monitors the inflation pressure of the tires.

After the system has “learned” the tire pressure with properly inflated tires, the LOW TIRE PRESSURE message will be displayed and four warning chimes will sound if the tire pressure in one tire becomes 12 psi (83 kPa) lower than the other three tires.

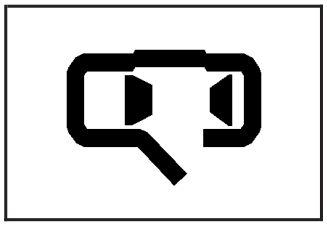
When you have checked the tire pressures, be sure to reset the tire inflation monitor. See “Tire Pressure Monitor System” under *Tires on page 5-65*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Door Ajar Warning Message

**United States**

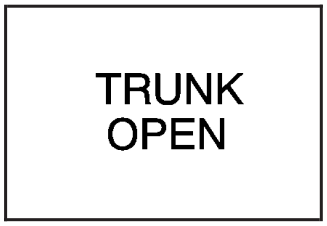


**Canada**

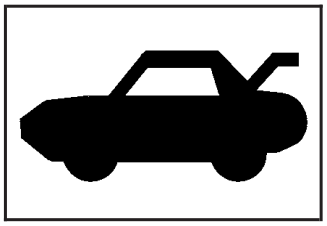
This message will appear if one of the doors is not completely closed and the ignition is in ON.

If you are in a forward or reverse gear position you will also hear four chimes.

## Trunk Ajar Warning Message




**United States**



**Canada**

This message will appear if the trunk is not completely closed and the ignition is in ON.

If you are in a forward or reverse gear position you will also hear four chimes.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Security Message

SECURITY

**United States**

**Canada**

This message is displayed to monitor the Passlock® system.

If the security message is displayed continuously while driving and stays on, there may be a problem with the Passlock® system. Your vehicle will not be protected by Passlock® and you should see your dealer for service. See *Passlock® on page 2-16* for more information.

## Low Washer Fluid Warning Message

LOW
WASHER
FLUID

**United States**

**Canada**

This message is displayed when the vehicle is low on windshield washer fluid.

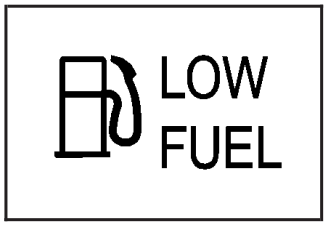
The message is only displayed for 60 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle. For more information see *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-48*.

When the ignition is turned off, this message will be displayed again for three seconds to remind you that your washer fluid is low. Be sure to refill the washer fluid tank right away.

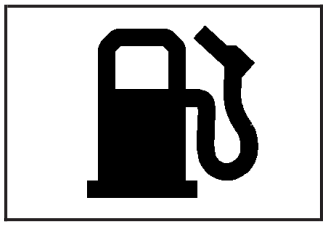


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Low Fuel Warning Message




**United States**

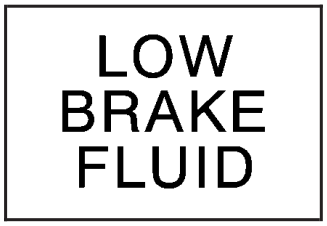


**Canada**

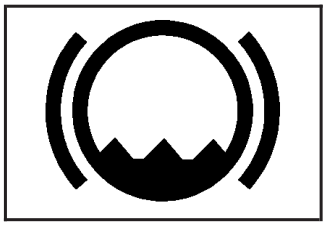
This message is displayed when your vehicle is low on fuel. Four chimes will also sound.

Refer to the fuel gage for a better indication of the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

## Low Brake Fluid Warning Message




**United States**



**Canada**

This message will be displayed when your vehicle has a brake problem. The brake system warning light will also be illuminated.

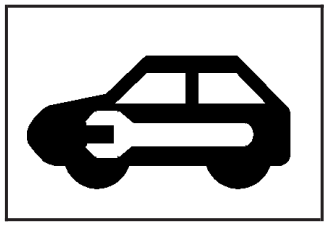
If this message appears, the brakes aren't working properly. You should have your vehicle serviced immediately. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-35* for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Service Vehicle Soon Message

**United States**

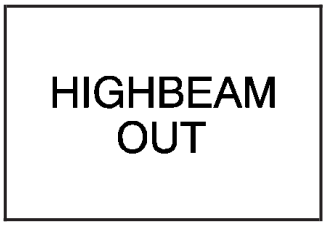


**Canada**

This message will come on if you have engine problems.

These problems may not be obvious and may not affect vehicle performance or durability. Consult a qualified dealership for necessary repairs to maintain top vehicle performance.

## Highbeam Out Warning Message




**United States**

**Canada**

If this message appears, you may have a problem with your high-beam headlamps.

The message will stay on about 60 seconds. When the ignition is turned off, this message will be displayed again for three seconds to remind you that you may have a problem with your highbeam-headlamps. Be sure to check your bulbs right away and replace them if necessary.

See *Bulb Replacement on page 5-60*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Driver Information Center (DIC)

**Optional Sunroof Version Shown**

If your vehicle is equipped with the DIC, it will show information about the vehicle and the surroundings. It is located in the headliner between the sun visors.

**RESET:** You can reset the AVG ECON, FUEL USED or AVG SPEED trip computer modes by pressing and holding this button for three seconds while you are in the mode you wish to reset. A chime will sound to confirm that your requested change has been made and all the segments of the display will briefly light up.

To change the display to a metric or English reading, press the RESET and MODE buttons at the same time. Hold them down for three seconds, and the display will change. A chime will be heard to confirm the new selection.

The reset button can also be used to manually calibrate the compass. See “Manual Compass Calibration” later in this section.

The reset button can be used to set the compass zone variation. See “Compass Variance” later in this section.

**MODE:** Press this button to cycle through three modes of operation: Off, Compass/Temperature and Trip Computer mode.

- **Off:** No driver information is displayed in this mode of operation.
- **Compass/Temperature Mode:** One of eight compass readings and the outside temperature are displayed. If the temperature is below 38°F (3°C), the word ICE is displayed for two minutes.
- **Trip Computer:** Pressing the MODE button cycles through the five displays. Press the MODE button after the last Trip Computer display to return the DIC to the OFF mode.

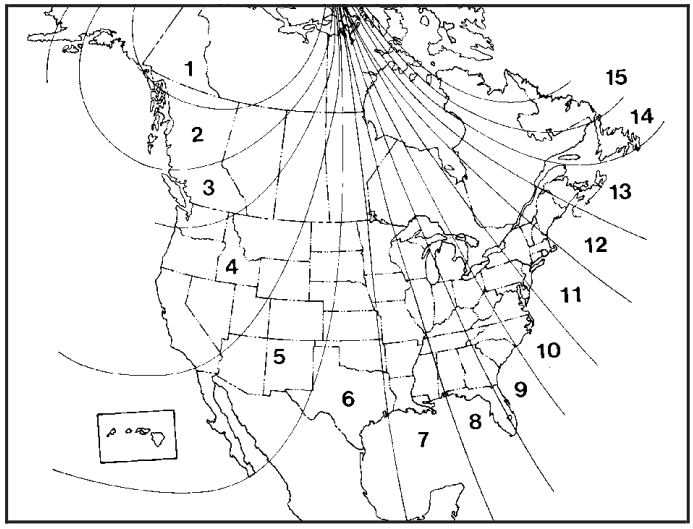


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Compass Variance

Compass variance is the difference between magnetic north and geographic north. In some areas of the country, the difference is great enough to cause the compass to give false readings. If this occurs, the compass variance must be set.

### Setting the Variance

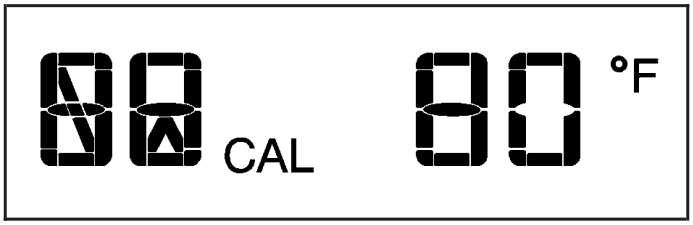



Turn the ignition on and cycle the DIC to the Compass/ Temperature mode. Press the RESET button for about five seconds. The last entered variance zone number and VAR will be displayed. Press the MODE button until the proper variance zone number on the map is shown. Press the RESET button to set the new variance zone and resume normal operation.

All the display segments will be illuminated briefly to acknowledge the change in zone number. A chime will sound to confirm that the new zone number has been set.

### Automatic Compass Calibration

The compass is self-calibrating, which eliminates the need to manually set the compass. When the vehicle is new, the calibration process may not be complete. In these cases CAL will be displayed, and all segments of the compass will be illuminated where the compass reading is normally displayed.




To calibrate the compass, in an area free from large metal objects, make one to two 360° turns. The calibration symbol will turn off and the compass reading will be displayed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Manual Compass Calibration

If the compass appears erratic and the calibration symbol does not appear, you must manually put the compass into the calibration mode.

Turn the ignition on and cycle the DIC to the Compass/Temperature mode. Press the RESET button for at least 10 seconds until the calibration symbol appears and all segments of the compass display are illuminated. A chime will sound to confirm that the calibration mode is active. Release the button and complete two or three 360° turns in an area free from large metal objects. The calibration symbol will turn off and the compass reading will be displayed. A chime will sound to verify that the calibration is complete.

### Error Displays

- An error of the speed sensor or fuel sender will cause -E- to be displayed.
- In the absence of vehicle communications, a dash - - is displayed.

If one of these error messages appear, see your dealer.

## Trip Computer

There are five trip computer displays which may be stepped through by pushing the MODE button. The information will appear in the following order:

**AVG ECON (Average Fuel Economy):** This shows the average fuel economy since the last reset.

**INST ECON (Instantaneous Fuel Economy):** This shows fuel economy for the most recent second of driving.

**RANGE (Trip Range):** This shows the estimated distance that can be traveled with the remaining fuel. The fuel economy used to calculate range is based on the last few hours of driving. When in a low fuel condition, LO is displayed.

**FUEL USED (Trip Fuel Used):** This shows the accumulated fuel used since the last reset.

**AVG SPEED (Average Speed):** This shows the average speed since the last reset.

### Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold the RESET button for at least three seconds. The reset is acknowledged with all segments of the display lit briefly and a chime. A reset can only be done in AVG ECON, FUEL USED and AVG SPEED displays. Each setting must be reset individually.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Audio System(s)

***Notice:*** **Before you add any sound equipment to your vehicle – like a tape player, CB radio, mobile telephone or two-way radio – be sure you can add what you want. If you can, it's very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added improperly.**

**So, before adding sound equipment, check with your dealer and be sure to check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units.**

Your audio system has been designed to operate easily and to give years of listening pleasure. You will get the most enjoyment out of it if you acquaint yourself with it first. Figure out which radio you have in your vehicle, find out what your audio system can do and how to operate all of its controls to be sure you're getting the most out of the advanced engineering that went into it.

Your vehicle has a feature called Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, you can play your audio system even after the ignition is turned off. See "Retained Accessory Power (RAP)" under *Ignition Positions on page 2-17*.

## Setting the Time

Press and hold the HR or MN buttons for two seconds. Then press and hold HR until the correct hour appears on the display. AM or PM will appear for morning or evening hours. Press and hold MN until the correct minute appears on the display. The time may be set with the ignition on or off. The clock symbol will appear on the display in time-set mode.

To synchronize the time with an FM station broadcasting Radio Data System (RDS) information, press and hold HR and MN at the same time for two seconds until UPDATED and the clock symbol appear on the display. If the time is not available from the station, NO UPDAT will appear on the display.

RDS time is broadcast once a minute. Once you have tuned to an RDS broadcast station, it may take a few minutes for your time to update.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Radio with Cassette

### Radio Data System (RDS)

Your audio system is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, your radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations
- Seek to stations with traffic announcements

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and will only work when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that will cause the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While you are tuned to an RDS station, the station name or the call letters will appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

### XM™ Satellite Radio Service (48 Contiguous US States)

XM™ is a continental U.S. based satellite radio service that offers 100 coast to coast channels including music, news, sports, talk, and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information, including song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™ at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Playing the Radio

**PWR (Power):** Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

**VOL (Volume):** Turn this knob to increase or to decrease volume.

**AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume):** With automatic volume, your audio system adjusts automatically to make up for road and wind noise as you drive.

Set the volume at the desired level. Press this button to select LOW, MEDIUM, or HIGH. AVOL will appear on the display. Each higher setting will allow for more volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds. Then as you drive, automatic volume increases the volume, as necessary, to overcome noise at any speed. The volume level should always sound the same to you as you drive. NONE will appear on the display if the radio cannot determine the vehicle speed. If you do not want to use automatic volume, select OFF.

**DISPL (Display):** For RDS, press this knob to change what appears on the display while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY, and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (48 contiguous US states, if equipped), press the DISPL knob while in XM mode to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, press the DISPL knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and the selected display will now be the default.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Finding a Station

**BAND:** Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (48 contiguous US states, if equipped). The display will show your selection.

**TUNE:** Turn this knob to select radio stations.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ **:** Press the right or the left arrow to seek to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio will seek only to stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

◀ **PSCAN** ▶ **(Preset Scan):** Press and hold either arrow for more than two seconds until you hear a beep. The radio will go to the first preset station stored on your pushbuttons, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next preset station. SCAN will appear on the display. Press either arrow again or one of the pushbuttons to stop scanning presets.

The radio will scan only to the preset stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

## Setting Preset Stations

The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations. You can set up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM, six XM1 and six XM2 (48 contiguous US states, if equipped), by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press AUTO TONE to select the equalization.
5. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered pushbutton, the station you set will return and the equalization that you selected will be automatically stored for that pushbutton.
6. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

**AUDIO:** Push and release the AUDIO knob until BASS or TREB appears on the display. Then turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The display will show the bass or the treble level. If a station is weak or noisy, you may want to decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass and the treble to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio will produce one beep and adjust the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL will appear on the display and you will hear a beep.

**AUTO TONE (Automatic Tone):** Press this button to select customized equalization settings designed for country/western, jazz, talk, pop, rock, and classical.

To return the bass and treble to the manual mode, push and release the AUDIO knob until MANUAL appears on the display.

## Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

**AUDIO:** To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FADE appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust the balance and the fade to the middle position, push the AUDIO knob, then push it again and hold it until you hear one beep. The balance and the fade will be adjusted to the middle position and the display will show the speaker balance.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL will appear on the display and you will hear a beep.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Press the P-TYPE knob to activate program type select mode. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
2. Turn the P-TYPE knob to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button to take you to the PTY's first station.
4. If you want to go to another station within that PTY and the PTY is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button once. If the PTY is not displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button twice to display the PTY and then to go to another station.
5. Press the P-TYPE knob to exit program type select mode.

   If PTY times out and is no longer on the display, go back to Step 1.

If both PTY and TRAF are on, the radio will search for stations with the selected PTY and traffic announcements.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE will appear on the display and the radio will return to the last station you were listening to.

**BAND (Alternate Frequency):** Alternate frequency allows the radio to switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON will appear on the display. The radio may switch to stronger stations.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for two seconds. AF OFF will appear on the display. The radio will not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

## RDS Messages

**ALERT!:** Alert warns of local or national emergencies. When an alert announcement comes on the current radio station, ALERT! will appear on the display. You will hear the announcement, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape is playing. If a cassette tape is playing, play will stop during the announcement. You will not be able to turn off alert announcements.

ALERT! will not be affected by tests of the emergency broadcast system. This feature is not supported by all RDS stations.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**INFO (Information):** If the current station has a message, INFO will appear on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the whole message is not displayed, parts of the message will appear every three seconds. To scroll through the message at your own speed, press the INFO button repeatedly. A new group of words will appear on the display with each press. Once the complete message has been displayed, INFO will disappear from the display until another new message is received. The old message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. You can view an old message until a new message is received or a different station is tuned to.

When a message is not available from a station, NO INFO will be displayed.

**TRAF (Traffic):** If TRAF appears on the display, the tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements and when a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station you will hear it.

If the current tuned station does not broadcast traffic announcements, press the TRAF button and the radio will seek to a station that does. When the radio finds a station that broadcasts traffic announcements, the radio will stop and TRAF will be displayed.

When a traffic announcement come on the tuned radio station you will hear it. If no station is found, NO TRAF will appear on the display.

If TRAF is on the display you can press the TRAF button to turn off the traffic announcements.

Your radio will play the traffic announcement even if the volume is low. Your radio will interrupt the play of a cassette tape if the last tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements.

This function does not apply to XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

## Radio Messages

**CAL ERR (Calibration Error):** Your audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR appears on the display it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and must be returned to the dealer for service.

**LOCKED:** This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. You must return to the dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## XM™ Radio Messages

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| XL (Explicit Language Channels) | XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language. | These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696). |
| Updating | Updating encryption code | The encryption code in your receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds. |
| No Signl | Loss of signal | Your system is functioning correctly, but you are in a location that is blocking the XM signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return. |
| Loading | Acquiring channel audio (after 4 second delay) | Your radio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly. |
| Off Air | Channel not in service | This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel. |
| CH Unavl | Channel no longer available | This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of your presets, you may need to choose another station for that preset button. |
| No Info | Artist Name/Feature not available | No artist information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | Song/Program Title not available | No song title information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## XM™ Radio Messages (cont'd)

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| No Info | Category Name not available | No category information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | No Text/Informational message available | No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| Not Found | No channel available for the chosen category | There are no channels available for the category you selected. Your system is working properly. |
| XM Lock | Theft lock active | The XM receiver in your vehicle may have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If you receive this message after having your vehicle serviced, check with the servicing facility. |
| Radio ID | Radio ID label (channel 0) | If you tune to channel 0, you will see this message alternating with your XM Radio 8 digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate your service. |
| Unknown | Radio ID not known (should only be if hardware failure) | If you receive this message when you tune to channel 0, you may have a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer. |
| Check XM | Hardware failure | If this message does not clear within a short period of time, your receiver may have a fault. Consult with your retail location. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Playing a Cassette Tape

Your tape player is built to work best with tapes that are up to 30 to 45 minutes long on each side. Tapes longer than that are so thin they may not work well in this player. The longer side with the tape visible should face to the right. If the ignition is on and the radio is off, the tape can be inserted and will begin playing. A tape symbol is shown on the display whenever a tape is inserted. If you hear nothing but a garbled sound, the tape may not be in squarely. Press EJT to remove the tape and start over. If you want to insert a tape while the ignition is off, first press the EJT button or the DISPL knob.

While the tape is playing, use VOL, TUNE, SEEK, and PSCAN controls just as you do for the radio. The radio will display TAPE and an arrow showing which side of the tape is playing.

Your tape bias is set automatically when a metal or chrome tape is inserted.

If an error appears on the display, see “Cassette Tape Messages” later in this section.

**1 PREV (Previous):** Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for previous to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the previous selection on the tape if the current selection has been playing for less than three seconds. If pressed when the current selection has been playing from 3 to 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the previous selection or the beginning of the current selection, depending upon the position on the tape. If pressed when the current selection has been playing for more than 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the current selection.

SEEK and a negative number will appear on the display while the cassette player is in the previous mode. Pressing this pushbutton multiple times will increase the number of selections to be searched back, up to -9.

**2 NEXT:** Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for next to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the next selection on the tape. If you press this pushbutton more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the tape. SEEK and a positive number will appear on the display. To forward through each selection press the right SEEK arrow.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press this pushbutton to reverse quickly within the tape. Press it again to return to playing speed. The radio will play while the tape reverses. The station frequency and REV will appear on the display. You may select stations during reverse operation using TUNE and the SEEK arrows.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press this pushbutton to advance quickly within the tape. Press the pushbutton again to return to playing speed. The radio will play while the tape advances. The station frequency and FWD will appear on the display. You may select stations during forward operation using TUNE and the SEEK arrows.

**5 SIDE:** Press this pushbutton to play the other side of the tape.

**◀ SEEK ▶:** If the right or the left arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward or backward through the tape. SEEK and a positive or a negative number will appear on the display.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a tape is playing. The inactive tape will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**TAPE AUX (Auxiliary):** Press this button to play a cassette tape when listening to the radio.

**EJT (Eject):** Press this button to eject a tape. Eject may be activated with the radio off. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off if this button is pressed first.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cassette Tape Messages

**CHK TAPE (Check Tape):** If this message appears on the display, the tape will not play because of one of the following errors:

- The tape is tight and the player cannot turn the tape hubs. Remove the tape. Hold the tape with the open end down and try to turn the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Turn the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, your tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to make sure your player is working properly.
- The tape is broken. Try a new tape.
- The tape is wrapped around the tape head. Attempt to get the cassette out. Try a new tape.

**CLEAN:** If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See *Care of Your Cassette Tape Player on page 3-93*.

If the cassette is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good cassette.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If you radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to the dealer when reporting the problem.

## CD Adapter Kits

It is possible to use a portable CD player with your cassette tape player after activating the bypass feature on your tape player.

To activate the bypass feature, use the following steps:

1. Turn the radio off.
2. Press and hold the TAPE AUX button for five seconds. READY will appear on the display, indicating the feature is active.
3. Insert the adapter into the cassette slot. It will power up the radio and begin playing.

The override feature will remain active until EJT is pressed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Radio with CD

## Radio Data System (RDS)

Your audio system is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, your radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations
- Seek to stations with traffic announcements

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and will only work when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that will cause the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While you are tuned to an RDS station, the station name or the call letters will appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

## XM™ Satellite Radio Service (48 Contiguous US States)

XM™ is a continental U.S. based satellite radio service that offers 100 coast to coast channels including music, news, sports, talk, and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information, including song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™ at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Playing the Radio

**PWR (Power):** Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

**VOL (Volume):** Turn this knob to increase or to decrease volume.

**AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume):** With automatic volume, your audio system adjusts automatically to make up for road and wind noise as you drive.

Set the volume at the desired level. Press this button to select LOW, MEDIUM, or HIGH. AVOL will appear on the display. Each higher setting will allow for more volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds. Then as you drive, automatic volume increases the volume, as necessary, to overcome noise at any speed. The volume level should always sound the same to you as you drive. NONE will appear on the display if the radio cannot determine the vehicle speed. If you do not want to use automatic volume, select OFF.

**DISPL (Display):** For RDS, press this knob to change what appears on the display while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY, and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (48 contiguous US states, if equipped), press the DISPL knob while in XM mode to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, press the DISPL knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and the selected display will now be the default.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Finding a Station

**BAND:** Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (48 contiguous US states, if equipped). The display will show your selection.

**TUNE:** Turn this knob to select radio stations.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ **:** Press the right or the left arrow to seek to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio will seek only to stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

◀ **PSCAN (Preset Scan)** ▶ **:** Press and hold either arrow for more than two seconds and the radio will produce one beep. The radio will scan to the first preset station stored on the pushbuttons, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next preset station. SCAN will appear on the display. Press either arrow again or one of the pushbuttons to stop scanning presets.

The radio will scan only to the preset stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

## Setting Preset Stations

The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations. You can set up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM, six XM1 and six XM2 (48 contiguous US states, if equipped), by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press AUTO TONE to select the equalization.
5. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered pushbutton, the station you set will return and the equalization that you selected will be automatically stored for that pushbutton.
6. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

**AUDIO:** Push and release the AUDIO knob until BASS or TREB appears on the display. Then turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The display will show the bass or the treble level. If a station is weak or noisy, you may want to decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass and the treble to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio will produce one beep and adjust the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL will appear on the display and you will hear a beep.

**AUTO TONE (Automatic Tone):** Press this button to select customized equalization settings designed for country/western, jazz, talk, pop, rock, and classical.

To return the bass and treble to the manual mode, push and release the AUDIO knob until MANUAL appears on the display.

## Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

**AUDIO:** To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FADE appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust the balance and the fade to the middle position, push the AUDIO knob, then push it again and hold it until you hear one beep. The balance and the fade will be adjusted to the middle position and the display will show the speaker balance.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL will appear on the display and you will hear a beep.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Press the P-TYPE knob to activate program type select mode. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
2. Turn the P-TYPE knob to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button to take you to the PTY's first station.
4. If you want to go to another station within that PTY and the PTY is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button once. If the PTY is not displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button twice to display the PTY and then to go to another station.
5. Press the P-TYPE knob to exit program type select mode.

   If PTY times out and is no longer on the display, go back to Step 1.

If both PTY and TRAF are on, the radio will search for stations with the selected PTY and traffic announcements.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE will appear on the display and the radio will return to the last station you were listening to.

**BAND (Alternate Frequency):** Alternate frequency allows the radio to switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON will appear on the display. The radio may switch to stronger stations.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for two seconds. AF OFF will appear on the display. The radio will not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

## RDS Messages

**ALERT!:** Alert warns of local or national emergencies. When an alert announcement comes on the current radio station, ALERT! will appear on the display. You will hear the announcement, even if the volume is muted or a CD is playing. If a CD is playing, play will stop during the announcement. You will not be able to turn off alert announcements.

ALERT! will not be affected by tests of the emergency broadcast system. This feature is not supported by all RDS stations.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**INFO (Information):** If the current station has a message, the information symbol will appear on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the whole message is not displayed, parts of the message will appear every three seconds. To scroll through the message at your own speed, press the INFO button repeatedly. A new group of words will appear on the display with each press. Once the complete message has been displayed, the information symbol will disappear from the display until another new message is received. The old message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. You can view an old message until a new message is received or a different station is tuned to.

When a message is not available from a station, NO INFO will be displayed.

**TRAF (Traffic):** If TRAF appears on the display, the tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements and when a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station you will hear it.

If the current tuned station does not broadcast traffic announcements, press the TRAF button and the radio will seek to a station that does. When the radio finds a station that broadcasts traffic announcements, the radio will stop and TRAF will be displayed.

When a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station you will hear it. If no station is found, NO TRAF will appear on the display.

If TRAF is on the display you can press the TRAF button to turn of the traffic announcements.

Your radio will play the traffic announcement even if the volume is muted. Your radio will interrupt the play of a CD if the last tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements.

This function does not apply to XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

## Radio Messages

**CAL ERR (Calibration Error):** Your audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR appears on the display it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and must be returned to the dealer for service.

**LOCKED:** This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. You must return to the dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## XM™ Radio Messages

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| XL (Explicit Language Channels) | XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language. | These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696). |
| Updating | Updating encryption code | The encryption code in your receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds. |
| No Signl | Loss of signal | Your system is functioning correctly, but you are in a location that is blocking the XM signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return. |
| Loading | Acquiring channel audio (after 4 second delay) | Your radio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly. |
| Off Air | Channel not in service | This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel. |
| CH Unavl | Channel no longer available | This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of your presets, you may need to choose another station for that preset button. |
| No Info | Artist Name/Feature not available | No artist information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | Song/Program Title not available | No song title information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## XM™ Radio Messages (cont'd)

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| No Info | Category Name not available | No category information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | No Text/Informational message available | No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| Not Found | No channel available for the chosen category | There are no channels available for the category you selected. Your system is working properly. |
| XM Lock | Theft lock active | The XM receiver in your vehicle may have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If you receive this message after having your vehicle serviced, check with the servicing facility. |
| Radio ID | Radio ID label (channel 0) | If you tune to channel 0, you will see this message alternating with your XM Radio 8 digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate your service. |
| Unknown | Radio ID not known (should only be if hardware failure) | If you receive this message when you tune to channel 0, you may have a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer. |
| Check XM | Hardware failure | If this message does not clear within a short period of time, your receiver may have a fault. Consult with your retail location. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Playing a CD

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in and the CD should begin playing. The CD symbol will appear on the display. If you want to insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the EJT button or the DISPL knob.

If you turn off the ignition or radio with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When you turn on the ignition or the radio, the CD will start playing, where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

As each new track starts to play, the track number will appear on the display.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. You may experience an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur try a known good CD.

Do not add paper labels to CDs, they could get caught in the CD player.

Do not play 3 inch CDs without a standard adapter CD.

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**1 PREV (Previous):** Press this pushbutton to go to the start of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If you hold this pushbutton or press it more than once, the player will continue moving backward through the CD.

**2 NEXT:** Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If you hold this pushbutton or press it more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the CD.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to reverse at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release it to play the passage. The display will show ET and the elapsed time of the track.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to advance at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release it to play the passage. The display will show ET and the elapsed time of the track.

**6 RDM (Random):** Press this pushbutton to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ON will appear on the display. RDM T and the track number will appear on the display when each track starts to play. Press RDM again to turn off random play. RDM OFF will appear on the display.

**◀ SEEK ▶ :** Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current or of the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. If you hold either arrow or press it more than once, the player will continue moving backward or forward through the CD.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**DISPL (Display):** Press this knob to see how long the current track has been playing. ET and the elapsed time of the track will appear on the display. To change the default on the display (track or elapsed time), press the knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and the selected display will now be the default.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**CD AUX (Auxiliary):** Press this button to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD symbol will appear on the display when a CD is loaded.

⏏ **EJT (Eject):** Press this button to eject a CD. Eject may be activated with either the ignition or radio off. CDs may be loaded with the radio and ignition off if this button is pressed first.

## CD Messages

If CHECK CD appears on the display and the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smooth, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If your radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Radio with Cassette and CD

### Radio Data System (RDS)

Your audio system is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, your radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations
- Seek to stations with traffic announcements

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and will only work when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that will cause the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While you are tuned to an RDS station, the station name or the call letters will appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

### XM™ Satellite Radio Service (48 Contiguous US States)

XM™ is a continental U.S. based satellite radio service that offers 100 coast to coast channels including music, news, sports, talk, and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information, including song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™ at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Playing the Radio

**PWR (Power):** Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

**VOL (Volume):** Turn this knob to increase or to decrease volume.

**AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume):** With automatic volume, your audio system adjusts automatically to make up for road and wind noise as you drive.

Set the volume at the desired level. Press this button to select LOW, MEDIUM, or HIGH. AVOL will appear on the display. Each higher setting will allow for more volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds. Then as you drive, automatic volume increases the volume, as necessary, to overcome noise at any speed. The volume level should always sound the same to you as you drive. NONE will appear on the display if the radio cannot determine the vehicle speed. If you do not want to use automatic volume, select OFF.

**DISPL (Display):** For RDS, press this knob to change what appears on the display while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY, and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (48 contiguous US states, if equipped), press the DISPL knob while in XM mode to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, press the DISPL knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and the selected display will now be the default.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Finding a Station

**BAND:** Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (48 contiguous US states, if equipped). The display will show your selection.

**TUNE:** Turn this knob to select radio stations.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ **:** Press the right or the left arrow to seek to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio will seek only to stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

◀ **PSCAN (Preset Scan)** ▶ **:** Press and hold either arrow for more than two seconds and the radio will produce one beep. The radio will scan to the first preset station stored on the pushbuttons, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next preset station. SCAN will appear on the display. Press either arrow again or one of the pushbuttons to stop scanning presets.

The radio will scan only to the preset stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

## Setting Preset Stations

The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations. You can set up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM, six XM1 and six XM2 (48 contiguous US states, if equipped), by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press AUTO TONE to select the equalization.
5. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered pushbutton, the station you set will return and the equalization that you selected will be automatically stored for that pushbutton.
6. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

**AUDIO:** Push and release the AUDIO knob until BASS or TREB appears on the display. Then turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The display will show the bass or the treble level. If a station is weak or noisy, you may want to decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass and the treble to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio will produce one beep and adjust the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL will appear on the display and you will hear a beep.

**AUTO TONE (Automatic Tone):** Press this button to select customized equalization settings designed for country/western, jazz, talk, pop, rock, and classical.

To return the bass and treble to the manual mode, push and release the AUDIO knob until MANUAL appears on the display.

## Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

**AUDIO:** To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FADE appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust the balance and the fade to the middle position, push the AUDIO knob, then push it again and hold it until you hear one beep. The balance and the fade will be adjusted to the middle position and the display will show the speaker balance.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL will appear on the display and you will hear a beep.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Press the P-TYPE knob to activate program type select mode. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
2. Turn the P-TYPE knob to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button to take you to the PTY's first station.
4. If you want to go to another station within that PTY and the PTY is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button once. If the PTY is not displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button twice to display the PTY and then to go to another station.
5. Press the P-TYPE knob to exit program type select mode.

   If PTY times out and is no longer on the display, go back to Step 1.

If both PTY and TRAF are on, the radio will search for stations with the selected PTY and traffic announcements.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE will appear on the display and the radio will return to the last station you were listening to.

**BAND (Alternate Frequency):** Alternate frequency allows the radio to switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON will appear on the display. The radio may switch to stronger stations.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for two seconds. AF OFF will appear on the display. The radio will not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

## RDS Messages

**ALERT!:** Alert warns of local or national emergencies. When an alert announcement comes on the current radio station, ALERT! will appear on the display. You will hear the announcement, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or a CD is playing. If a cassette tape or a CD is playing, play will stop during the announcement. You will not be able to turn off alert announcements.

ALERT! will not be affected by tests of the emergency broadcast system. This feature is not supported by all RDS stations.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**INFO (Information):** If the current station has a message, the information symbol will appear on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the whole message is not displayed, parts of the message will appear every three seconds. To scroll through the message at your own speed, press the INFO button repeatedly. A new group of words will appear on the display with each press. Once the complete message has been displayed, the information symbol will disappear from the display until another new message is received. The old message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. You can view an old message until a new message is received or a different station is tuned to.

When a message is not available from a station, NO INFO will be displayed.

**TRAF (Traffic):** If TRAF appears on the display, the tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements and when a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station you will hear it.

If the current tuned station does not broadcast traffic announcements, press the TRAF button and the radio will seek to a station that does. When the radio finds a station that broadcasts traffic announcements, the radio will stop and TRAF will be displayed.

When a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station you will hear it. If no station is found, NO TRAF will appear on the display.

If TRAF is on the display you can press the TRAF button to turn of the traffic announcements.

Your radio will play the traffic announcement even if the volume is muted. Your radio will interrupt the play of a cassette tape or a CD if the last tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements.

This function does not apply to XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

## Radio Messages

**CAL ERR (Calibration Error):** Your audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR appears on the display it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and must be returned to the dealer for service.

**LOCKED:** This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. You must return to the dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## XM™ Radio Messages

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| XL (Explicit Language Channels) | XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language. | These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696). |
| Updating | Updating encryption code | The encryption code in your receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds. |
| No Signl | Loss of signal | Your system is functioning correctly, but you are in a location that is blocking the XM signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return. |
| Loading | Acquiring channel audio (after 4 second delay) | Your radio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly. |
| Off Air | Channel not in service | This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel. |
| CH Unavl | Channel no longer available | This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of your presets, you may need to choose another station for that preset button. |
| No Info | Artist Name/Feature not available | No artist information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | Song/Program Title not available | No song title information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## XM™ Radio Messages (cont'd)

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| No Info | Category Name not available | No category information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | No Text/Informational message available | No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| Not Found | No channel available for the chosen category | There are no channels available for the category you selected. Your system is working properly. |
| XM Lock | Theft lock active | The XM receiver in your vehicle may have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If you receive this message after having your vehicle serviced, check with the servicing facility. |
| Radio ID | Radio ID label (channel 0) | If you tune to channel 0, you will see this message alternating with your XM Radio 8 digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate your service. |
| Unknown | Radio ID not known (should only be if hardware failure) | If you receive this message when you tune to channel 0, you may have a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer. |
| Check XM | Hardware failure | If this message does not clear within a short period of time, your receiver may have a fault. Consult with your retail location. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Playing a Cassette Tape

Your tape player is built to work best with tapes that are up to 30 to 45 minutes long on each side. Tapes longer than that are so thin they may not work well in this player. The longer side with the tape visible should face to the right. If the ignition is on and the radio is off, the tape can be inserted and will begin playing. A tape symbol is shown on the display whenever a tape is inserted. If you hear nothing but a garbled sound, the tape may not be in squarely. Press EJT to remove the tape and start over. If you want to insert a tape while the ignition is off, first press the EJT button or the DISPL knob.

While the tape is playing, use VOL, TUNE, SEEK, and PSCAN controls just as you do for the radio. The radio will display TAPE and an arrow showing which side of the tape is playing.

Your tape bias is set automatically when a metal or chrome tape is inserted.

If an error appears on the display, see “Cassette Tape Messages” later in this section.

**1 PREV (Previous):** Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for previous to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the previous selection on the tape if the current selection has been playing for less than three seconds. If pressed when the current selection has been playing from 3 to 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the previous selection or the beginning of the current selection, depending upon the position on the tape. If pressed when the current selection has been playing for more than 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the current selection.

SEEK and a negative number will appear on the display while the cassette player is in the previous mode. Pressing this pushbutton multiple times will increase the number of selections to be searched back, up to -9.

**2 NEXT:** Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for next to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the next selection on the tape. If you press this pushbutton more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the tape. SEEK and a positive number will appear on the display. To forward through each selection press the right SEEK arrow.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press this pushbutton to reverse quickly within the tape. Press it again to return to playing speed. The radio will play while the tape reverses. The station frequency and REV will appear on the display. You may select stations during reverse operation using TUNE and the SEEK arrows.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press this pushbutton to advance quickly within the tape. Press the pushbutton again to return to playing speed. The radio will play while the tape advances. The station frequency and FWD will appear on the display. You may select stations during forward operation using TUNE and the SEEK arrows.

**5 SIDE:** Press this pushbutton to play the other side of the tape.

**◀ SEEK ▶ :** If the right or the left arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward or backward through the tape. SEEK and a positive or a negative number will appear on the display.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a cassette tape or a CD is playing. The inactive cassette or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**TAPE CD:** Press this button to play a cassette tape or a CD when listening to the radio. The inactive cassette or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**EJT (Eject):** Press this button to eject a tape. Eject may be activated with the radio off. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off if this button is pressed first.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cassette Tape Messages

**CHK TAPE (Check Tape):** If this message appears on the display, the tape will not play because of one of the following errors:

- The tape is tight and the player cannot turn the tape hubs. Remove the tape. Hold the tape with the open end down and try to turn the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Turn the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, your tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to make sure your player is working properly.
- The tape is broken. Try a new tape.
- The tape is wrapped around the tape head. Attempt to get the cassette out. Try a new tape.

**CLEAN:** If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See *Care of Your Cassette Tape Player on page 3-93*.

If the cassette is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good cassette.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If you radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to the dealer when reporting the problem.

## CD Adapter Kits

It is possible to use a portable CD player with your cassette tape player after activating the bypass feature on your tape player.

To activate the bypass feature, use the following steps:

1. Turn the radio off.
2. Press and hold the TAPE CD button for five seconds. READY will appear on the display, indicating the feature is active.
3. Insert the adapter into the cassette slot. It will power up the radio and begin playing.

The override feature will remain active until EJT is pressed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Playing a CD

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in and the CD should begin playing. The CD symbol will appear on the display. If you want to insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the EJT button or the DISPL knob.

If you turn off the ignition or radio with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When you turn on the ignition or the radio, the CD will start playing, where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

As each new track starts to play, the track number will appear on the display.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. You may experience an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur try a known good CD.

Do not add paper labels to CDs, they could get caught in the CD player.

Do not play 3 inch CDs without a standard adapter CD.

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

**1 PREV (Previous):** Press this pushbutton to go to the start of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If you hold this pushbutton or press it more than once, the player will continue moving backward through the CD.

**2 NEXT:** Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If you hold this pushbutton or press it more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the CD.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to reverse at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release it to play the passage. The display will show ET and the elapsed time of the track.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to advance at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release it to play the passage. The display will show ET and the elapsed time of the track.

**6 RDM (Random):** Press this pushbutton to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ON will appear on the display. RDM T and the track number will appear on the display when each track starts to play. Press RDM again to turn off random play. RDM OFF will appear on the display.

**◀ SEEK ▶ :** Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current or of the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. If you hold either arrow or press it more than once, the player will continue moving backward or forward through the CD.

**DISPL (Display):** Press this knob to see how long the current track has been playing. ET and the elapsed time of the track will appear on the display. To change the default on the display (track or elapsed time), press the knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and the selected display will now be the default.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a cassette tape or a CD is playing. The inactive cassette or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**TAPE CD:** Press this button to play a cassette tape or a CD when listening to the radio. The inactive cassette or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**⏏ EJT (Eject):** Press this button to eject a CD. Eject may be activated with either the ignition or radio off. CDs may be loaded with the radio and ignition off if this button is pressed first.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## CD Messages

If CHECK CD appears on the display and the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smooth, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If your radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

## Theft-Deterrent Feature

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of your radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it will not operate and LOCKED will be displayed.

When the ignition is off and RAP is not active, the blinking red light indicates that THEFTLOCK is armed.

With THEFTLOCK activated, your radio will not operate if stolen.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Audio Steering Wheel Controls

If your vehicle has this feature, you can control certain radio functions using the buttons on your steering wheel.

△ **SEEK** ▽**:** Press the up or the down arrow to seek to the next or to the previous station.

If a cassette tape or CD is playing, the player will advance with the up arrow and reverse with the down arrow. Holding SEEK for three seconds or more will activate the preset scan mode.

**SEEK by TYPE:** Press this button to go to a station with the last selected PTY and the last selected PTY will appear on the display, if it is not already showing. If a station with the selected PTY is not found, the radio will return to the original station. If both SEEK by TYPE and TRAF are on, the radio will search for stations with the selected PTY and traffic announcements.

**PRESET:** Press this button to play a station you have programmed on the radio preset pushbuttons.

**MODE:** Press this button to choose FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2, (48 contiguous US states, if equipped). If a cassette tape or CD is playing, it will stop and the radio will play.

**MUTE:** Press this button to silence the system. Press it again to turn on the sound.

△ **VOL** ▽ **(Volume):** Press the up or the down arrow to increase or to decrease volume.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Understanding Radio Reception

### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range, however, can cause stations to interfere with each other. AM can pick up noise from things like storms and power lines. Try reducing the treble to reduce this noise.

### FM Stereo

FM stereo will give you the best sound, but FM signals will reach only about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to come and go.

### XM™ Satellite Radio Service (48 Contiguous US States)

XM™ Satellite Radio gives you digital radio reception from coast to coast. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to come and go. Your radio may display NO SIGNAL to indicate interference.

## Care of Your Cassette Tape Player

A tape player that is not cleaned regularly can cause reduced sound quality, ruined cassettes, or a damaged mechanism. Cassette tapes should be stored in their cases away from contaminants, direct sunlight, and extreme heat. If they are not, they may not operate properly or may cause failure of the tape player.

Your tape player should be cleaned regularly after every 50 hours of use. Your radio may display CLEAN to indicate that you have used your tape player for 50 hours without resetting the tape clean timer. If this message appears on the display, your cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to your tapes and player. If you notice a reduction in sound quality, try a known good cassette to see if the tape or the tape player is at fault. If this other cassette has no improvement in sound quality, clean the tape player.

For best results, use a scrubbing action, non-abrasive cleaning cassette with pads which scrub the tape head as the hubs of the cleaner cassette turn. The recommended cleaning cassette is available through your dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The broken tape detection feature of your cassette tape player may identify the cleaning cassette as a damaged tape, in error. To prevent the cleaning cassette from being ejected, use the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the TAPE AUX or the TAPE CD button for five seconds. READY will appear on the display and a cassette symbol will flash for five seconds.
4. Insert the scrubbing action cleaning cassette.
5. Eject the cleaning cassette after the manufacturer's recommended cleaning time.

After the cleaning cassette is ejected, the broken tape detection feature will be active again.

You may also choose a non-scrubbing action, wet-type cleaner which uses a cassette with a fabric belt to clean the tape head. This type of cleaning cassette will not eject on its own. A non-scrubbing action cleaner may not clean as thoroughly as the scrubbing type cleaner. The use of a non-scrubbing action, dry-type cleaning cassette is not recommended.

After you clean the player, press and hold the EJT button for five seconds to reset the CLEAN indicator. The radio will display CLEANED to show the indicator was reset.

Cassettes are subject to wear and the sound quality may degrade over time. Always make sure the cassette tape is in good condition before you have your tape player serviced.

## Care of Your CDs

Handle CDs carefully. Store them in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. If the surface of a CD is soiled, dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution and clean it, wiping from the center to the edge.

Be sure never to touch the side without writing when handling CDs. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Care of Your CD Player

The use of CD lens cleaners for CDs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD mechanism.

## Backglass Antenna

The AM-FM antenna is integrated with the rear window defogger, located in the rear window. Be sure that the inside surface of the rear window is not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception. Also, for proper radio reception, the antenna connector at the top-center of the rear window needs to be properly attached to the post on the glass.

***Notice:*** **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window may damage the rear window antenna and/or the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.**

***Notice:*** **Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to your backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by your warranty.**

Because this antenna is built into your rear window, there is a reduced risk of damage caused by car washes and vandals.

If you choose to add a cellular telephone to your vehicle, and the antenna needs to be attached to the glass, be sure that you do not damage the grid lines for the AM-FM antenna. There is enough space between the lines to attach a cellular telephone antenna without interfering with radio reception

Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting to the back glass. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Care must be taken when cleaning the rear window because it breaks in the resistive material heating element and will adversely affect radio and defogger performance. See your dealer for details.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System (48 Contiguous US States)

Your XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of your vehicle. Keep this antenna clear of snow and ice build up for clear radio reception.

The performance of your XM system may be affected if your sunroof is open.

## Vehicle Customization Settings

Your audio system can be used to control vehicle customization settings using the DISPL knob when the radio is off. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 2-42* for more information.

## Chime Level Adjustment

The radio is the vehicle chime producer. To change the volume level, press and hold pushbutton 6 with the ignition on and the radio power off. The chime volume level will change from the normal level to loud, and LOUD will appear on the display. To change back to the default or normal setting, press and hold pushbutton 6 again. The chime level will change from the loud level to normal, and NORMAL will appear on the display. Each time the chime volume is changed, three chimes will sound as an example of the new volume selected. Removing the radio and not replacing it with a factory radio or chime module will disable vehicle chimes.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

**Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle** .....4-2
Defensive Driving .....4-2
Drunken Driving .....4-2
Control of a Vehicle .....4-6
Braking .....4-6
Traction Control System (TCS) .....4-10
Steering .....4-12
Off-Road Recovery .....4-14
Passing .....4-14
Loss of Control .....4-16
Driving at Night .....4-17
Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads .....4-18
City Driving .....4-21
Freeway Driving .....4-22
Before Leaving on a Long Trip .....4-23
Highway Hypnosis .....4-24
Hill and Mountain Roads .....4-24
Winter Driving .....4-26
If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow ...4-30

**Towing** .....4-31
Towing Your Vehicle .....4-31
Recreational Vehicle Towing .....4-31
Loading Your Vehicle .....4-33
Towing a Trailer .....4-38



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle

## Defensive Driving

The best advice anyone can give about driving is: Drive defensively.

Please start with a very important safety device in your vehicle: Buckle up. See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-10*.

Defensive driving really means “be ready for anything.” On city streets, rural roads or freeways, it means “always expect the unexpected.”

Assume that pedestrians or other drivers are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do. Be ready for their mistakes.

Rear-end collisions are about the most preventable of accidents. Yet they are common. Allow enough following distance. It is the best defensive driving maneuver, in both city and rural driving. You never know when the vehicle in front of you is going to brake or turn suddenly.

Defensive driving requires that a driver concentrate on the driving task. Anything that distracts from the driving task — such as concentrating on a cellular telephone call, reading, or reaching for something on the floor — makes proper defensive driving more difficult and can even cause a collision, with resulting injury. Ask a passenger to help do things like this, or pull off the road in a safe place to do them yourself. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

## Drunken Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a national tragedy. It is the number one contributor to the highway death toll, claiming thousands of victims every year.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle:

- Judgment
- Muscular Coordination
- Vision
- Attentiveness.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Police records show that almost half of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 16,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with more than 300,000 people injured.

Many adults — by some estimates, nearly half the adult population — choose never to drink alcohol, so they never drive after drinking. For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive. But what if people do? How much is “too much” if someone plans to drive? It is a lot less than many might think. Although it depends on each person and situation, here is some general information on the problem.

The Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) of someone who is drinking depends upon four things:

- The amount of alcohol consumed
- The drinker’s body weight
- The amount of food that is consumed before and during drinking
- The length of time it has taken the drinker to consume the alcohol.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

According to the American Medical Association, a 180 lb (82 kg) person who drinks three 12 ounce (355 ml) bottles of beer in an hour will end up with a BAC of about 0.06 percent. The person would reach the same BAC by drinking three 4 ounce (120 ml) glasses of wine or three mixed drinks if each had 1-1/2 ounces (45 ml) of liquors like whiskey, gin or vodka.

It is the amount of alcohol that counts. For example, if the same person drank three double martinis (3 ounces or 90 ml of liquor each) within an hour, the person's BAC would be close to 0.12 percent. A person who consumes food just before or during drinking will have a somewhat lower BAC level.

There is a gender difference, too. Women generally have a lower relative percentage of body water than men. Since alcohol is carried in body water, this means that a woman generally will reach a higher BAC level than a man of her same body weight will when each has the same number of drinks.

The law in an increasing number of U.S. states, and throughout Canada, sets the legal limit at 0.08 percent. In some other countries, the limit is even lower. For example, it is 0.05 percent in both France and Germany. The BAC limit for all commercial drivers in the United States is 0.04 percent.

The BAC will be over 0.10 percent after three to six drinks (in one hour). Of course, as we have seen, it depends on how much alcohol is in the drinks, and how quickly the person drinks them.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

But the ability to drive is affected well below a BAC of 0.10 percent. Research shows that the driving skills of many people are impaired at a BAC approaching 0.05 percent, and that the effects are worse at night. All drivers are impaired at BAC levels above 0.05 percent. Statistics show that the chance of being in a collision increases sharply for drivers who have a BAC of 0.05 percent or above. A driver with a BAC level of 0.06 percent has doubled his or her chance of having a collision. At a BAC level of 0.10 percent, the chance of this driver having a collision is 12 times greater; at a level of 0.15 percent, the chance is 25 times greater!

The body takes about an hour to rid itself of the alcohol in one drink. No amount of coffee or number of cold showers will speed that up. “I will be careful” is not the right answer. What if there is an emergency, a need to take sudden action, as when a child darts into the street? A person with even a moderate BAC might not be able to react quickly enough to avoid the collision.

There is something else about drinking and driving that many people do not know. Medical research shows that alcohol in a person’s system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person’s chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

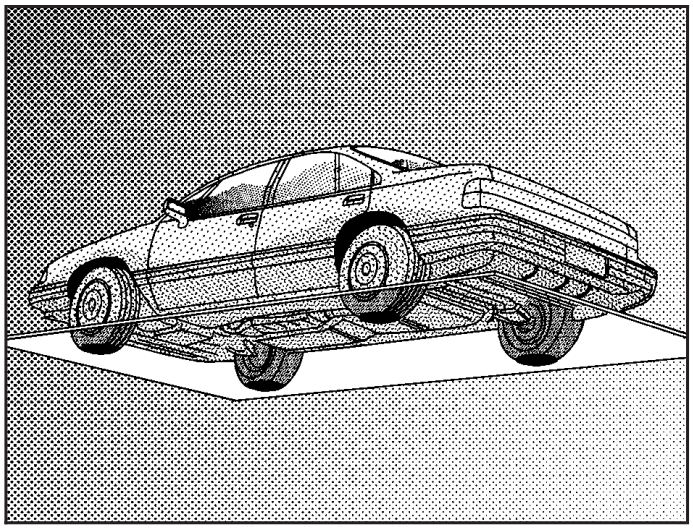
**Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Please do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Control of a Vehicle

You have three systems that make your vehicle go where you want it to go. They are the brakes, the steering and the accelerator. All three systems have to do their work at the places where the tires meet the road.



Sometimes, as when you are driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. That means you can lose control of your vehicle. Also see *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-10*.

## Braking

Braking action involves *perception time* and *reaction time.*

First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That is *perception time.* Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That is *reaction time.*

Average *reaction time* is about 3/4 of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs and frustration. But even in 3/4 of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road (whether it is pavement or gravel); the condition of the road (wet, dry, icy); tire tread; the condition of your brakes; the weight of the vehicle and the amount of brake force applied.



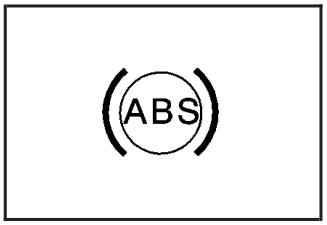
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. Your brakes may not have time to cool between hard stops. Your brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

If your engine ever stops while you are driving, brake normally but do not pump your brakes. If you do, the pedal may get harder to push down. If your engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it may take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Your vehicle may have anti-lock brakes. ABS is an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.




If your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, this warning light on the instrument panel will come on briefly when you start your vehicle.

When you start your engine, or when you begin to drive away, your anti-lock brake system will check itself. You may hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on, and you may even notice that your brake pedal moves or pulses a little. This is normal.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

The anti-lock system can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As you brake, your computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remember: Anti-lock does not change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you will not have time to apply your brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have anti-lock brakes.

### Using Anti-Lock

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let anti-lock work for you. You may feel a slight brake pedal pulsation or notice some noise, but this is normal.

## Braking in Emergencies

At some time, nearly every driver gets into a situation that requires hard braking.

If you have anti-lock, you can steer and brake at the same time. However, if you do not have anti-lock, your first reaction — to hit the brake pedal hard and hold it down — may be the wrong thing to do. Your wheels can stop rolling. Once they do, the vehicle can not respond to your steering. Momentum will carry it in whatever direction it was headed when the wheels stopped rolling. That could be off the road, into the very thing you were trying to avoid, or into traffic.

If you do not have anti-lock, use a “squeeze” braking technique. This will give you maximum braking while maintaining steering control. You can do this by pushing on the brake pedal with steadily increasing pressure.

In an emergency, you will probably want to squeeze the brakes hard without locking the wheels. If you hear or feel the wheels sliding, ease off the brake pedal. This will help you retain steering control. If you *do* have anti-lock, it is different. See “Anti-Lock Brake System” in this section.

In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

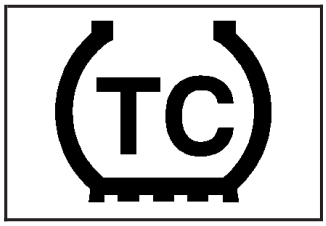


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Traction Control System (TCS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Traction Control System that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that one or both of the front wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system reduces engine power and may also upshift the transaxle and apply the front brakes to limit wheel spin.

**United States**



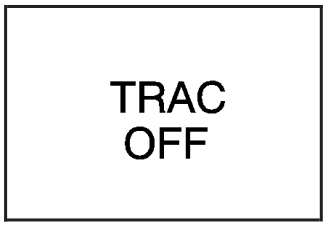

**Canada**

This light will come on when your Traction Control System is limiting wheel spin. See *Traction Active Message on page 3-43*.

You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may re-engage the cruise control. See *Cruise Control Light on page 3-41*.

The Traction Control System operates in all transaxle shift lever positions. But the system can upshift the transaxle only as high as the shift lever position you've chosen, so you should use the lower gears only when necessary. See *Automatic Transaxle Operation on page 2-21*.




When the system is on, this warning light will come on to let you know if there's a problem.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light on page 3-36*. When this warning light is on, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, you should always leave the Traction Control System on. But you can turn the system off if you ever need to.

You should turn the system off if your vehicle ever gets stuck in sand, mud or snow and rocking the vehicle is required. See *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-30*.

To turn the system on or off, press the TRAC OFF button on the console.

When you turn the system off, a chime will sound and the Traction Control System warning light will come on and stay on. If the Traction Control System is limiting wheel spin when you press the button to turn the system off, the warning light will come on and the system will turn off right away.

You can turn the system back on at any time by pressing the button again. The Traction Control System warning light should go off.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Steering

## Power Steering

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

## Steering Tips

### Driving on Curves

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the “driver lost control” accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves.

Here is why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there is no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you have ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you will understand this.

The traction you can get in a curve depends on the condition of your tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While you are in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you are steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly apply the brakes. Both control systems — steering and braking — have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Unless you have four-wheel anti-lock brakes, adding the hard braking can demand too much of those places. You can lose control.

The same thing can happen if you are steering through a sharp curve and you suddenly accelerate. Those two control systems — steering and acceleration — can overwhelm those places where the tires meet the road and make you lose control.

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the brake or accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you will want to go slower.

If you need to reduce your speed as you approach a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while your front wheels are straight ahead.

Try to adjust your speed so you can “drive” through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.



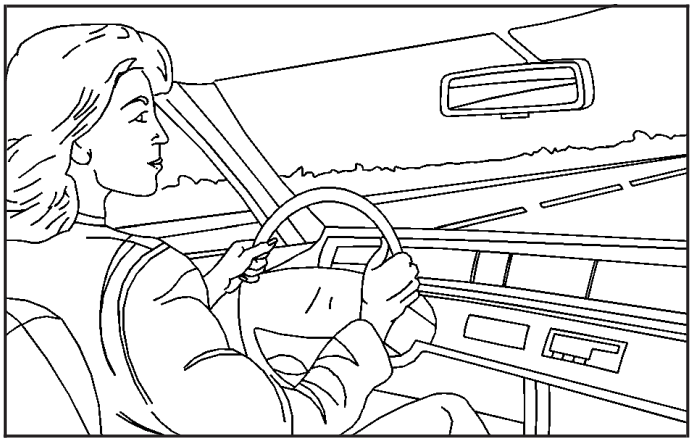
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you can not; there is not room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply your brakes — but, unless you have anti-lock, not enough to lock your wheels.

See *Braking on page 4-6*. It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.



An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

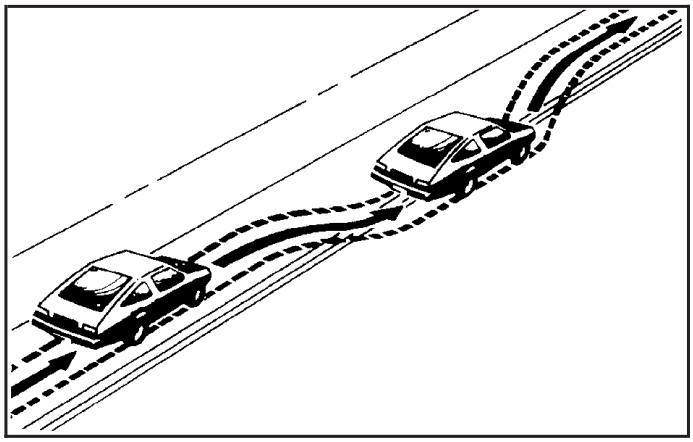
The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Off-Road Recovery

You may find that your right wheels have dropped off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while you're driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. You can turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn your steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

## Passing

The driver of a vehicle about to pass another on a two-lane highway waits for just the right moment, accelerates, moves around the vehicle ahead, then goes back into the right lane again. A simple maneuver?

Not necessarily! Passing another vehicle on a two-lane highway is a potentially dangerous move, since the passing vehicle occupies the same lane as oncoming traffic for several seconds. A miscalculation, an error in judgment, or a brief surrender to frustration or anger can suddenly put the passing driver face to face with the worst of all traffic accidents — the head-on collision.

So here are some tips for passing:

- "Drive ahead." Look down the road, to the sides and to crossroads for situations that might affect your passing patterns. If you have any doubt whatsoever about making a successful pass, wait for a better time.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings and lines. If you can see a sign up ahead that might indicate a turn or an intersection, delay your pass. A broken center line usually indicates it is all right to pass (providing the road ahead is clear). Never cross a solid line on your side of the lane or a double solid line, even if the road seems empty of approaching traffic.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass while you are awaiting an opportunity. For one thing, following too closely reduces your area of vision, especially if you are following a larger vehicle. Also, you will not have adequate space if the vehicle ahead suddenly slows or stops. Keep back a reasonable distance.
- When it looks like a chance to pass is coming up, start to accelerate but stay in the right lane and do not get too close. Time your move so you will be increasing speed as the time comes to move into the other lane. If the way is clear to pass, you will have a “running start” that more than makes up for the distance you would lose by dropping back. And if something happens to cause you to cancel your pass, you need only slow down and drop back again and wait for another opportunity.
- If other vehicles are lined up to pass a slow vehicle, wait your turn. But take care that someone is not trying to pass you as you pull out to pass the slow vehicle. Remember to glance over your shoulder and check the blind spot.
- Check your mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and start your left lane change signal before moving out of the right lane to pass. When you are far enough ahead of the passed vehicle to see its front in your inside mirror, activate your right lane change signal and move back into the right lane. (Remember that your right outside mirror is convex. The vehicle you just passed may seem to be farther away from you than it really is.)
- Try not to pass more than one vehicle at a time on two-lane roads. Reconsider before passing the next vehicle.
- Do not overtake a slowly moving vehicle too rapidly. Even though the brake lamps are not flashing, it may be slowing down or starting to turn.
- If you are being passed, make it easy for the following driver to get ahead of you. Perhaps you can ease a little to the right.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems (brakes, steering and acceleration) do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

## Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not “overdriving” those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle’s three control systems. In the braking skid, your wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid and an acceleration skid are best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel or other material is on the road. For safety, you will want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

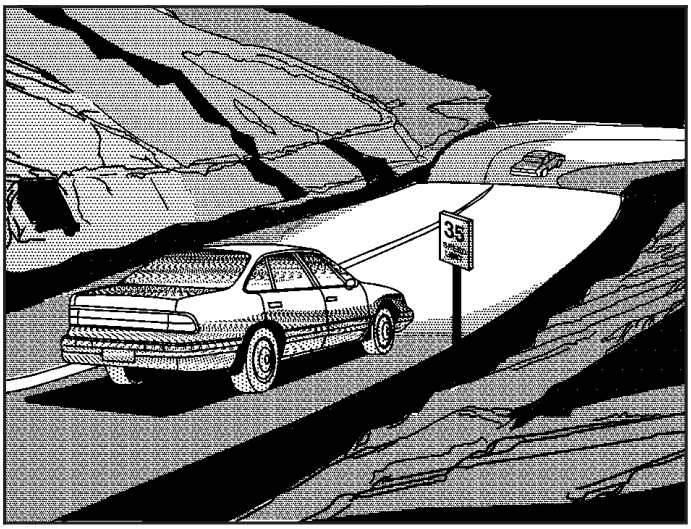
While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration or braking (including engine braking by shifting to a lower gear). Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice or packed snow on the road to make a “mirrored surface” — and slow down when you have any doubt.

If you have the anti-lock braking system, remember: It helps avoid only the braking skid. If you do not have anti-lock, then in a braking skid (where the wheels are no longer rolling), release enough pressure on the brakes to get the wheels rolling again. This restores steering control. Push the brake pedal down steadily when you have to stop suddenly. As long as the wheels are rolling, you will have steering control.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Driving at Night




Night driving is more dangerous than day driving. One reason is that some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Here are some tips on night driving.

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Adjust your inside rearview mirror to reduce the glare from headlamps behind you.
- Since you can not see as well, you may need to slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles.
- Slow down, especially on higher speed roads. Your headlamps can light up only so much road ahead.
- In remote areas, watch for animals.
- If you are tired, pull off the road in a safe place and rest.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But as we get older these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver may require at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

What you do in the daytime can also affect your night vision. For example, if you spend the day in bright sunshine you are wise to wear sunglasses. Your eyes will have less trouble adjusting to night. But if you are driving, do not wear sunglasses at night. They may cut down on glare from headlamps, but they also make a lot of things invisible.



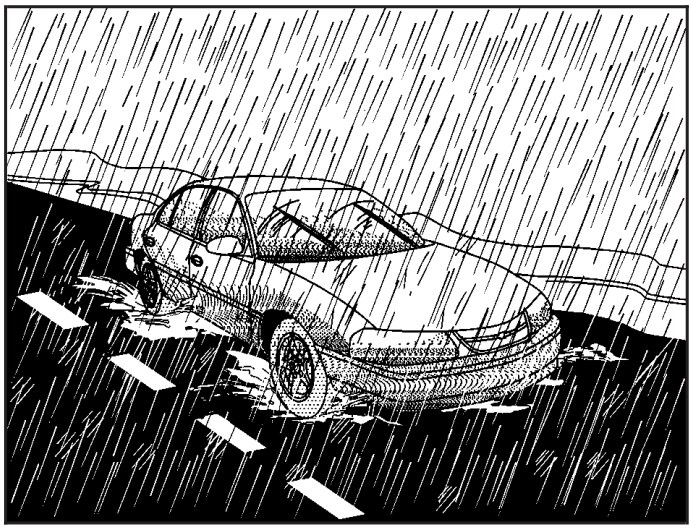
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You can be temporarily blinded by approaching headlamps. It can take a second or two, or even several seconds, for your eyes to readjust to the dark. When you are faced with severe glare (as from a driver who does not lower the high beams, or a vehicle with misaimed headlamps), slow down a little. Avoid staring directly into the approaching headlamps.

Keep your windshield and all the glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out. Glare at night is made much worse by dirt on the glass. Even the inside of the glass can build up a film caused by dust. Dirty glass makes lights dazzle and flash more than clean glass would, making the pupils of your eyes contract repeatedly.

Remember that your headlamps light up far less of a roadway when you are in a turn or curve. Keep your eyes moving; that way, it is easier to pick out dimly lighted objects. Just as your headlamps should be checked regularly for proper aim, so should your eyes be examined regularly. Some drivers suffer from night blindness — the inability to see in dim light — and are not even aware of it.

## Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads



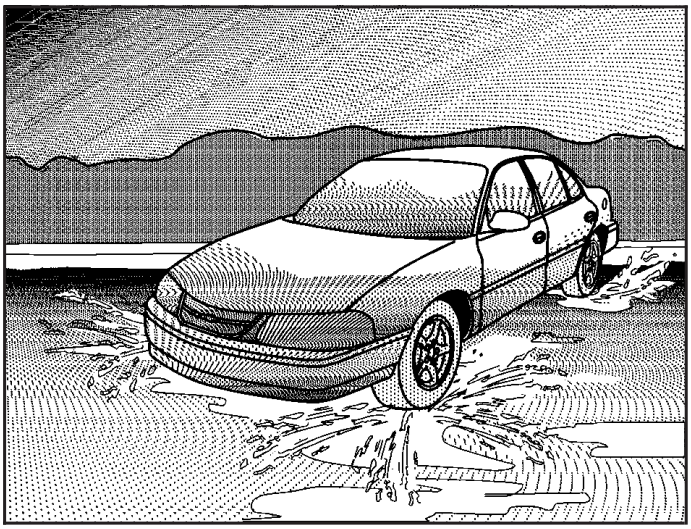
Rain and wet roads can mean driving trouble. On a wet road, you can not stop, accelerate or turn as well because your tire-to-road traction is not as good as on dry roads. And, if your tires don not have much tread left, you will get even less traction. It is always wise to go slower and be cautious if rain starts to fall while you are driving. The surface may get wet suddenly when your reflexes are tuned for driving on dry pavement.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The heavier the rain, the harder it is to see. Even if your windshield wiper blades are in good shape, a heavy rain can make it harder to see road signs and traffic signals, pavement markings, the edge of the road and even people walking.

It is wise to keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape and keep your windshield washer tank filled with washer fluid. Replace your windshield wiper inserts when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield, or when strips of rubber start to separate from the inserts.



Driving too fast through large water puddles or even going through some car washes can cause problems, too. The water may affect your brakes. Try to avoid puddles. But if you can not, try to slow down before you hit them.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Wet brakes can cause accidents. They will not work as well in a quick stop and may cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.**

**After driving through a large puddle of water or a car wash, apply your brake pedal lightly until your brakes work normally.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. So much water can build up under your tires that they can actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

Hydroplaning does not happen often. But it can if your tires do not have much tread or if the pressure in one or more is low. It can happen if a lot of water is standing on the road. If you can see reflections from trees, telephone poles or other vehicles, and raindrops “dimple” the water’s surface, there could be hydroplaning.

Hydroplaning usually happens at higher speeds. There just is not a hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when it is raining.

## Driving Through Deep Standing Water

***Notice:*** **If you drive too quickly through deep puddles or standing water, water can come in through your engine’s air intake and badly damage your engine. Never drive through water that is slightly lower than the underbody of your vehicle. If you can not avoid deep puddles or standing water, drive through them very slowly.**

## Driving Through Flowing Water

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. If you try to drive through flowing water, as you might at a low water crossing, your vehicle can be carried away. As little as six inches of flowing water can carry away a smaller vehicle. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warning signs, and otherwise be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.**

## Some Other Rainy Weather Tips

- Besides slowing down, allow some extra following distance. And be especially careful when you pass another vehicle. Allow yourself more clear room ahead, and be prepared to have your view restricted by road spray.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 5-65*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## City Driving

One of the biggest problems with city streets is the amount of traffic on them. You will want to watch out for what the other drivers are doing and pay attention to traffic signals.

Here are ways to increase your safety in city driving:

- Know the best way to get to where you are going. Get a city map and plan your trip into an unknown part of the city just as you would for a cross-country trip.
- Try to use the freeways that rim and crisscross most large cities. You will save time and energy. See *Freeway Driving on page 4-22*.
- Treat a green light as a warning signal. A traffic light is there because the corner is busy enough to need it. When a light turns green, and just before you start to move, check both ways for vehicles that have not cleared the intersection or may be running the red light.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Freeway Driving

Mile for mile, freeways (also called thruways, parkways, expressways, turnpikes or superhighways) are the safest of all roads. But they have their own special rules.

The most important advice on freeway driving is: Keep up with traffic and keep to the right. Drive at the same speed most of the other drivers are driving. Too-fast or too-slow driving breaks a smooth traffic flow. Treat the left lane on a freeway as a passing lane.

At the entrance, there is usually a ramp that leads to the freeway. If you have a clear view of the freeway as you drive along the entrance ramp, you should begin to check traffic. Try to determine where you expect to blend with the flow. Try to merge into the gap at close to the prevailing speed. Switch on your turn signal, check your mirrors and glance over your shoulder as often as necessary. Try to blend smoothly with the traffic flow.

Once you are on the freeway, adjust your speed to the posted limit or to the prevailing rate if it is slower. Stay in the right lane unless you want to pass.

Before changing lanes, check your mirrors. Then use your turn signal.

Just before you leave the lane, glance quickly over your shoulder to make sure there is not another vehicle in your “blind” spot.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Once you are moving on the freeway, make certain you allow a reasonable following distance.

Expect to move slightly slower at night.

When you want to leave the freeway, move to the proper lane well in advance. If you miss your exit, do not, under any circumstances, stop and back up. Drive on to the next exit.

The exit ramp can be curved, sometimes quite sharply. The exit speed is usually posted. Reduce your speed according to your speedometer, not to your sense of motion. After driving for any distance at higher speeds, you may tend to think you are going slower than you actually are.

## Before Leaving on a Long Trip

Make sure you are ready. Try to be well rested. If you must start when you are not fresh — such as after a day's work — do not plan to make too many miles that first part of the journey. Wear comfortable clothing and shoes you can easily drive in.

Is your vehicle ready for a long trip? If you keep it serviced and maintained, it is ready to go. If it needs service, have it done before starting out. Of course, you will find experienced and able service experts in GM dealerships all across North America. They will be ready and willing to help if you need it.

Here are some things you can check before a trip:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Is the reservoir full? Are all windows clean inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* Are they in good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* Have you checked all levels?
- *Lamps:* Are they all working? Are the lenses clean?
- *Tires:* They are vitally important to a safe, trouble-free trip. Is the tread good enough for long-distance driving? Are the tires all inflated to the recommended pressure?
- *Weather Forecasts:* What is the weather outlook along your route? Should you delay your trip a short time to avoid a major storm system?
- *Maps:* Do you have up-to-date maps?



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Highway Hypnosis

Is there actually such a condition as “highway hypnosis”? Or is it just plain falling asleep at the wheel? Call it highway hypnosis, lack of awareness, or whatever.

There is something about an easy stretch of road with the same scenery, along with the hum of the tires on the road, the drone of the engine, and the rush of the wind against the vehicle that can make you sleepy. Do not let it happen to you! If it does, your vehicle can leave the road in *less than a second,* and you could crash and be injured.

What can you do about highway hypnosis? First, be aware that it can happen.

Then here are some tips:

- Make sure your vehicle is well ventilated, with a comfortably cool interior.
- Keep your eyes moving. Scan the road ahead and to the sides. Check your rearview mirrors and your instruments frequently.
- If you get sleepy, pull off the road into a rest, service or parking area and take a nap, get some exercise, or both. For safety, treat drowsiness on the highway as an emergency.

## Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or mountains is different from driving in flat or rolling terrain.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you drive regularly in steep country, or if you are planning to visit there, here are some tips that can make your trips safer and more enjoyable.

- Keep your vehicle in good shape. Check all fluid levels and also the brakes, tires, cooling system and transaxle. These parts can work hard on mountain roads.
- Know how to go down hills. The most important thing to know is this: let your engine do some of the slowing down. Shift to a lower gear when you go down a steep or long hill.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you do not shift down, your brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let your engine assist your brakes on a steep downhill slope.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

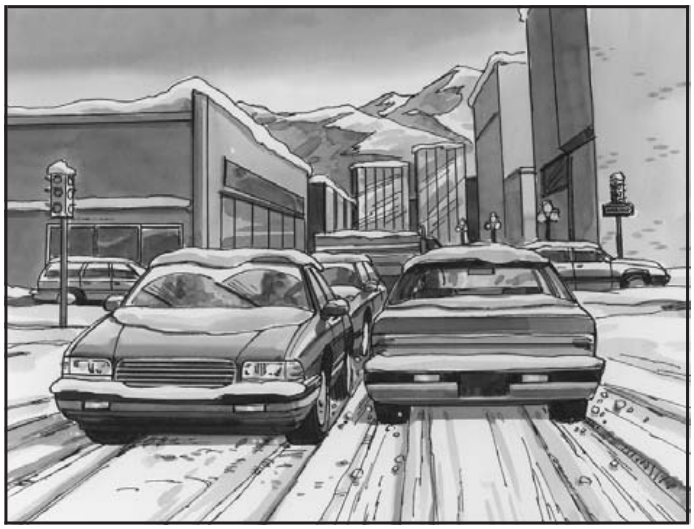
**Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. Your brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down. They could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have your engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.**

- Know how to go uphill. You may want to shift down to a lower gear. The lower gears help cool your engine and transaxle, and you can climb the hill better.
- Stay in your own lane when driving on two-lane roads in hills or mountains. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- As you go over the top of a hill, be alert. There could be something in your lane, like a stalled car or an accident.
- You may see highway signs on mountains that warn of special problems. Examples are long grades, passing or no-passing zones, a falling rocks area or winding roads. Be alert to these and take appropriate action.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Winter Driving



Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You may want to put winter emergency supplies in your trunk.

Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth and a couple of reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

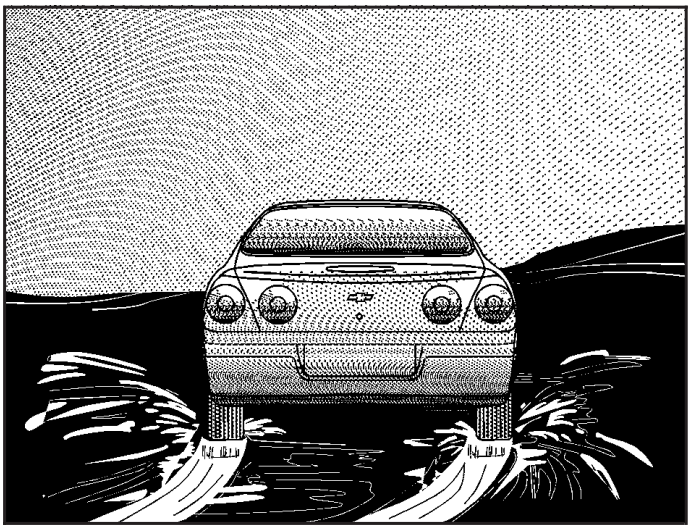


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where your tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between your tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You will have a lot less traction or “grip” and will need to be very careful.



What is the worst time for this? “Wet ice.” Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it may offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it is about freezing (32°F; 0°C) and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

Whatever the condition — smooth ice, packed, blowing or loose snow — drive with caution.

Keep your traction control system on. It improves your ability to accelerate when driving on a slippery road. Even though your vehicle has a traction control system, you will want to slow down and adjust your driving to the road conditions. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-10*.

Unless you have the anti-lock braking system, you will want to brake very gently, too. (If you do have anti-lock, see *Braking on page 4-6*. This system improves your vehicle’s stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road.) Whether you have the anti-lock braking system or not, you will want to begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. Without anti-lock brakes, if you feel your vehicle begin to slide, let up on the brakes a little. Push the brake pedal down steadily to get the most traction you can.

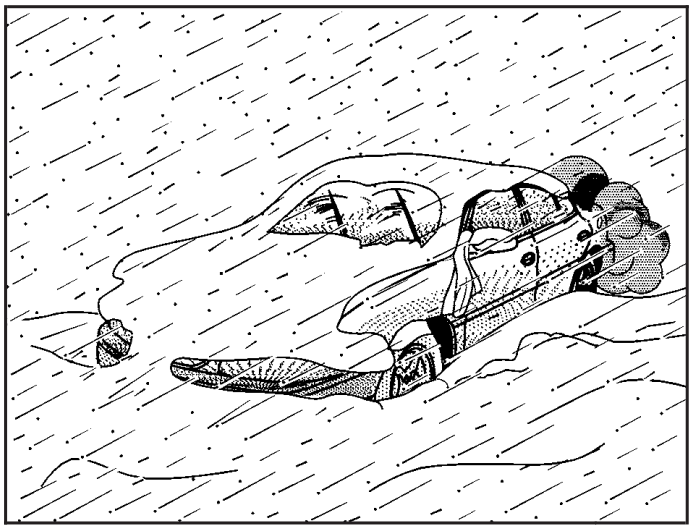


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remember, unless you have anti-lock, if you brake so hard that your wheels stop rolling, you will just slide. Brake so your wheels always keep rolling and you can still steer.

- Whatever your braking system, allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that is covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches may appear in shaded areas where the sun can not reach: around clumps of trees, behind buildings or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass may remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you are actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

## If You Are Caught in a Blizzard



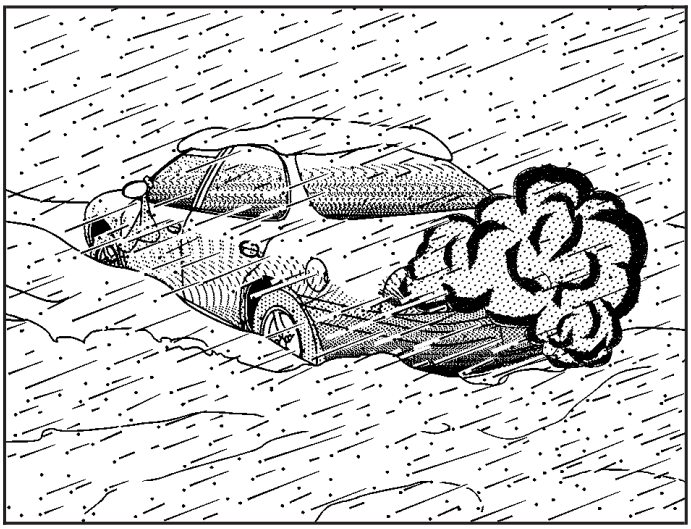
If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on your hazard flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you have been stopped by the snow.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you have no blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats — anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You can not see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking your exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.**

**Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.**

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with your headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

## If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow

In order to free your vehicle when it is stuck, you will need to spin the wheels, but you do not want to spin your wheels too fast. The method known as "rocking" can help you get out when you are stuck, but you must use caution.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you let your tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. And, the transaxle or other parts of**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**the vehicle can overheat. That could cause anengine compartment fire or other damage.When you are stuck, spin the wheels as little as possible. Do not spin the wheels above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.**

***Notice:*** **Spinning your wheels can destroy parts of your vehicle as well as the tires. If you spin the wheels too fast while shifting your transaxle back and forth, you can destroy your transaxle. See "Rocking Your Vehicle To Get It Out."**

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 5-80*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Rocking Your Vehicle To Get It Out

First, turn your steering wheel left and right. That will clear the area around your front wheels. If your vehicle has traction control, you should turn the system off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-10*. Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transaxle is in gear. By slowly spinning your wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that may free your vehicle. If that does not get you out after a few tries, you may need to be towed out. If you do need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-31*.

# Towing

## Towing Your Vehicle

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your disabled vehicle towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-6*.

If you want to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” following.

## Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing your vehicle behind another vehicle – such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as “dinghy towing” (towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and “dolly towing” (towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a “dolly”).

With the proper preparation and equipment, many vehicles can be towed in these ways. See “Dinghy Towing” and “Dolly Towing,” following.

Here are some important things to consider before you do recreational vehicle towing:

- What’s the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure you read the tow vehicle manufacturer’s recommendations.
- How far will you tow? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Do you have the proper towing equipment? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is your vehicle ready to be towed? Just as you would prepare your vehicle for a long trip, you’ll want to make sure your vehicle is prepared to be towed. See *Before Leaving on a Long Trip on page 4-23*.



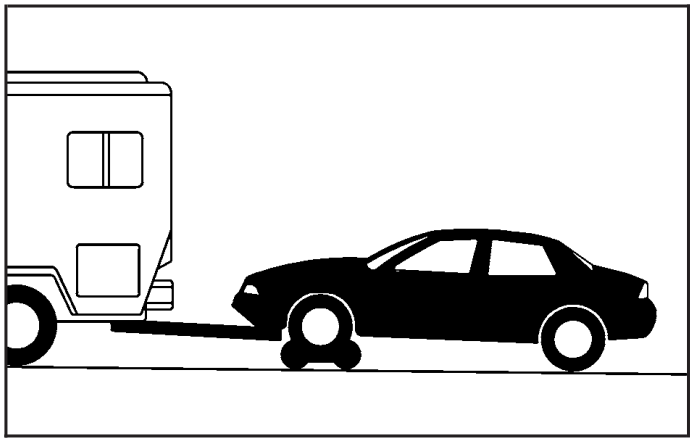
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Dinghy Towing

***Notice:*** **If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.**

Your vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If your vehicle must be towed, you should use a dolly. See “Dolly Towing” following for more information.

## Dolly Towing



Your vehicle can be towed using a dolly. To tow your vehicle using a dolly, follow these steps:

1. Put the front wheels on the dolly.
2. Put the vehicle in PARK (P).
3. Set the parking brake and then remove the key.
4. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position.
5. Release the parking brake.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

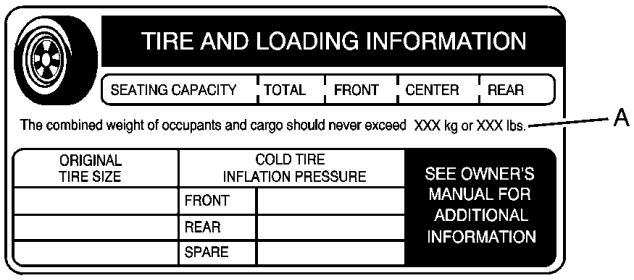
## Loading Your Vehicle

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification label.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR, or either the maximum front or rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

### Tire and Loading Information Label

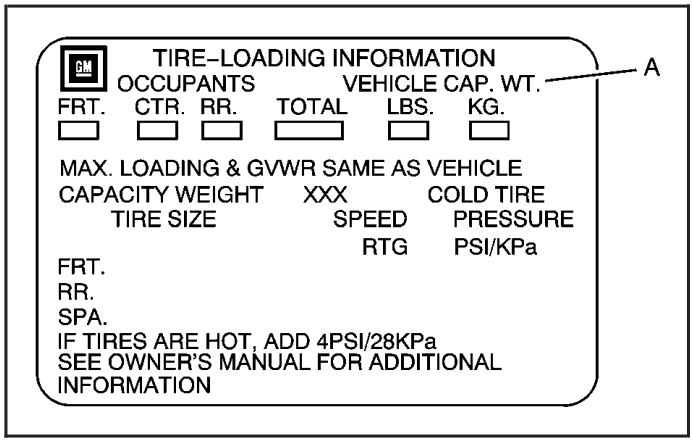



**Example 1**

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**Example 2**

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight

The Tire and Loading Information label shows the seating capacity and the total weight your vehicle can properly carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight. If your vehicle has the Tire and Loading Information label, Example 1, the label is attached to the center pillar, near the driver's door latch. If your vehicle has the Tire-Loading Information label, Example 2, the label is on the inside trunk lid.

The Tire and Loading Information label also gives you the size and recommended inflation pressure for the factory-installed, original equipment tires on your vehicle. For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 5-65* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-72*.

There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle; see "Certification Label" later in this section.

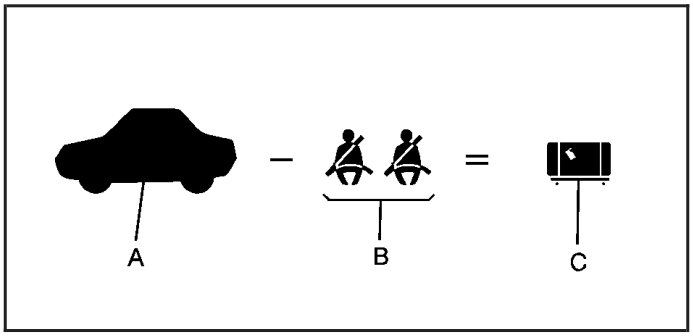


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds” on your vehicle placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 – 750  (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

If your vehicle can tow a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-38*, for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules and trailering tips.



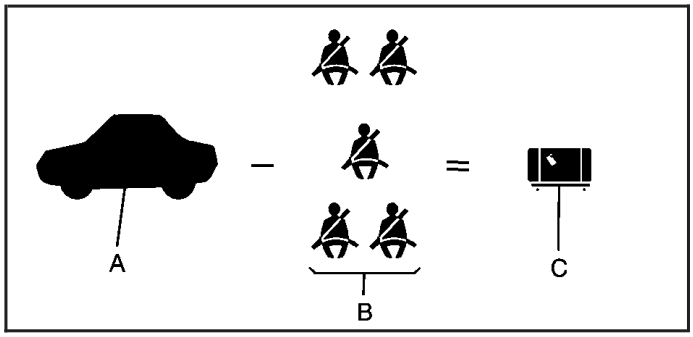

**Example 1**

### Loading Your Vehicle

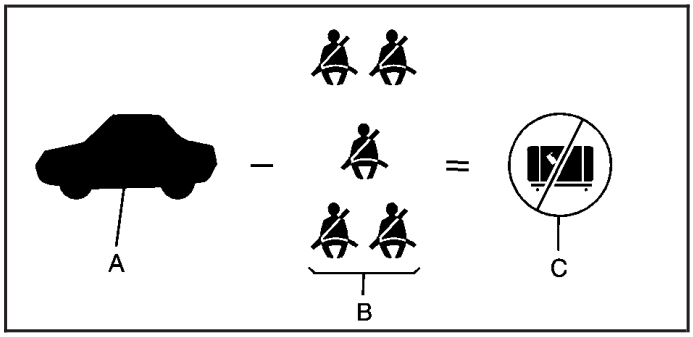
| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1= | 1,000 lbs (453 kg) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 = | 300 lbs (136 kg) |
| C | Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = | 700 lbs (317 kg) |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**Example 2**




**Example 3**

## Loading Your Vehicle

| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = | 1,000 lbs (453 kg) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 = | 750 lbs (340 kg) |
| C | Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = | 250 lbs (113 kg) |

## Loading Your Vehicle

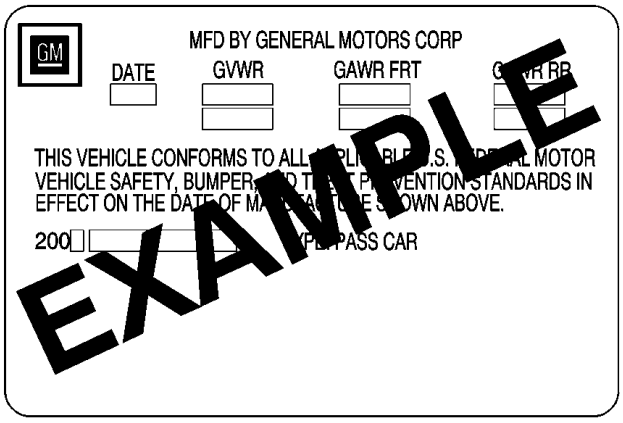
| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = | 1,000 lbs (453 kg) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 = | 1,000 lbs (453 kg) |
| C | Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = | 0 lbs (0 kg) |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight. Also see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-38*.

## Certification Label




The Certification label is found on the rear edge of the driver's door. It tells you the gross weight capacity of your vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo. Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

If you do have a heavy load, spread it out. Don't carry more than 167 pounds (75 kg) in your trunk.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR, or either the maximum front or rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

***Notice:*** **Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages or anything else — they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they'll keep going.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.**

- **Put things in the trunk of your vehicle. In a trunk, put them as far forward as you can. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**
- **Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.**

## Towing a Trailer

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you do not use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. You may also damage your vehicle; the resulting repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if it is equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section. But trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That’s the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies and tires are forced to work harder against the drag of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads, generating extra heat. What’s more, the trailer adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

## If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you’ll be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.
- Don’t tow a trailer at all during the first 1,000 miles (1 600 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that you tow a trailer, don’t drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and don’t make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Obey speed limit restrictions when towing a trailer. Don’t drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers, or no more than 55 mph (90 km/h), to save wear on your vehicle’s parts.

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer,
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the total weight on your vehicle’s tires.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It should never weigh more than 1,000 lbs. (454 kg). But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. And, it can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

You can ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or you can write us at:

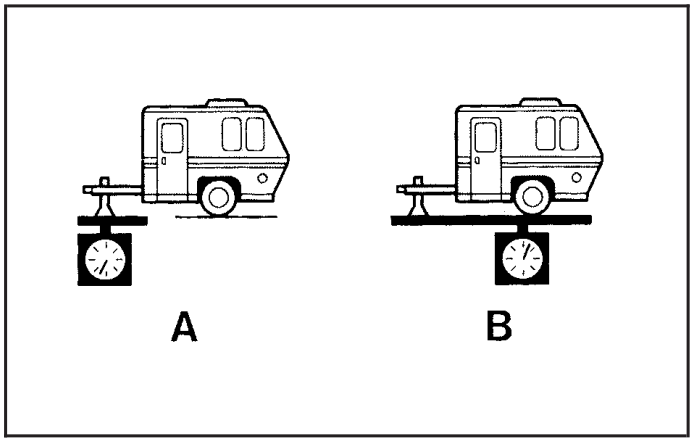
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

In Canada, write to:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

## Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33* for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you're using a weigh-carrying hitch or a weight-distributing hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10 to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to get them right simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

## Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You'll find these numbers on the Tire-Loading Information label, See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*. Then be sure you don't go over the GVW limit for your vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

## Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- The rear bumper on your vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-29*. Dirt and water can, too.

## Safety Chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains and do not attach them to the bumper. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

## Trailer Brakes

Does your trailer have its own brakes? Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes. Do not try to tap into your vehicle's brake system. If you do, both brake systems won't work well, or at all.

## Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you'll want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform (and attachments), safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

## Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

## Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because you're a good deal longer, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

## Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Making Turns

***Notice:*** **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

## Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle may need additional wiring. Check with your dealer. The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

## Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 45 mph (70 km/h) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If you have overdrive, you may want to drive in THIRD (3), instead of AUTOMATIC OVERDRIVE (D).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Parking on Hills

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.**

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into PARK (P) yet.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake, and then shift to PARK (P).
5. Release the regular brakes.

## When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
   - start your engine,
   - shift into a gear, and
   - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See the Maintenance Schedule for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transaxle fluid (don't overfill), engine oil, drive belts, cooling system and brake system. Each of these is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review this information before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

## Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

Your cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-34*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## NOTES



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 5 Service and Appearance Care


**Service** .....5-3
Doing Your Own Service Work .....5-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle .....5-4

**Fuel** .....5-4
Gasoline Octane .....5-4
Gasoline Specifications .....5-5
California Fuel .....5-5
Additives .....5-6
Fuels in Foreign Countries .....5-6
Filling Your Tank .....5-7
Filling a Portable Fuel Container .....5-9

**Checking Things Under the Hood** .....5-10
Hood Release .....5-10
Engine Compartment Overview .....5-12
Engine Oil .....5-18
Supercharger Oil .....5-24
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter .....5-26
Automatic Transaxle Fluid .....5-28
Engine Coolant .....5-31
Radiator Pressure Cap .....5-34
Engine Overheating .....5-34
Cooling System .....5-37
Power Steering Fluid .....5-47
Windshield Washer Fluid .....5-48
Brakes .....5-50
Battery .....5-53
Jump Starting .....5-54

**Headlamp Aiming** .....5-60

**Bulb Replacement** .....5-60
Halogen Bulbs .....5-60
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker, and Parking Lamps .....5-60
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Sidemarker Lamps .....5-62
Back-Up Lamps .....5-63
Replacement Bulbs .....5-63

**Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement** .....5-64

**Tires** .....5-65
Inflation - Tire Pressure .....5-72
Tire Pressure Monitor System .....5-73
Tire Inspection and Rotation .....5-75
When It Is Time for New Tires .....5-76
Buying New Tires .....5-76
Uniform Tire Quality Grading .....5-77
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance .....5-79




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 5 Service and Appearance Care


Wheel Replacement .....5-79
Tire Chains .....5-80
If a Tire Goes Flat .....5-81
Changing a Flat Tire .....5-82
Compact Spare Tire .....5-93

**Appearance Care** .....5-94
Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle .....5-94
Care of Safety Belts .....5-97
Weatherstrips .....5-97
Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle .....5-97
Sheet Metal Damage .....5-99
Finish Damage .....5-99
Underbody Maintenance .....5-100
Chemical Paint Spotting .....5-100
Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials .....5-100

**Vehicle Identification** .....5-102
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....5-102
Service Parts Identification Label .....5-102

**Electrical System** .....5-103
Add-On Electrical Equipment .....5-103
Headlamp Wiring .....5-103
Windshield Wiper Fuses .....5-103
Power Windows and Other Power Options .....5-103
Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....5-104

**Capacities and Specifications** .....5-110




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Service

Your dealer knows your vehicle best and wants you to be happy with it. We hope you will go to your dealer for all your service needs. You will get genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

We hope you will want to keep your GM vehicle all GM. Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

ACDelco®

GM Parts®

GM® Goodwrench

GM® Accessories

## Doing Your Own Service Work

If you want to do some of your own service work, you will want to use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-13*.

Your vehicle has an air bag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-56*.

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See *Maintenance Record on page 6-15*.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.**

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts and other fasteners. “English” and “metric” fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

## Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This may cause wind noise and affect windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

# Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of your vehicle.

## Gasoline Octane

If your vehicle has the 3400 V6 engine (VIN Code E) or the 3800 V6 engine (VIN Code K), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane of 87 or higher. If the octane is less than 87, you may get a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you might damage your engine. A little pinging noise when you accelerate or drive uphill is considered normal. This does not indicate a problem exists or that a higher-octane fuel is necessary. If you are using 87 octane or higher-octane fuel and you hear heavy knocking, your engine needs service.

If your vehicle has the 3800 Supercharged V6 engine (VIN Code 1), use only premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane of 91 or higher. In an emergency, you may be able to use a lower octane — as low as 87 — if heavy knocking does not occur. Refill your tank with premium fuel as soon as possible. Otherwise, you might damage your engine. If you are using 91 octane or higher-octane fuel and you hear heavy knocking, your engine needs service.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Gasoline Specifications

It is recommended that gasoline meet specifications which were developed by automobile manufacturers around the world and contained in the World-Wide Fuel Charter which is available from the Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers at www.autoalliance.org. Gasoline meeting these specifications could provide improved driveability and emission control system performance compared to other gasoline.

**Canada Only**

In Canada, look for the "Auto Makers' Choice" label on the pump.

## California Fuel

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emission Standards (see the underhood emission control label), it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on (see *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-39*) and your vehicle may fail a smog-check test. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by your warranty.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that will help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing your emission control system to work properly. You should not have to add anything to your fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. General Motors recommends that you buy gasolines that are advertised to help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. If your vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, try a different brand of gasoline.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines may be available in your area to contribute to clean air. General Motors recommends that you use these gasolines, particularly if they comply with the specifications described earlier.

***Notice:*** **Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and also damage the plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under your warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. General Motors does not recommend the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for service.

## Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel may be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by your warranty.

To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

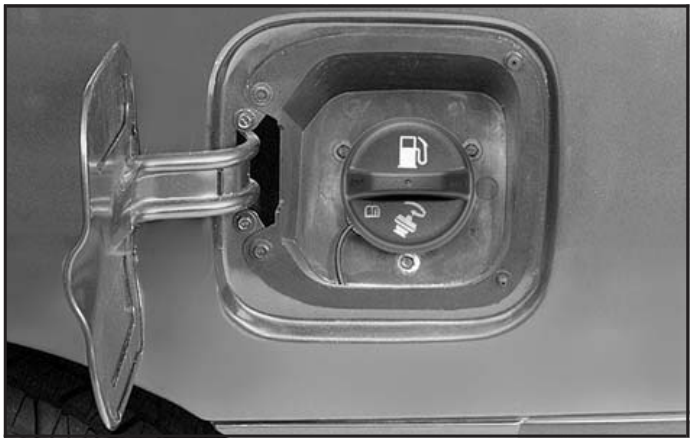


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Filling Your Tank

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off your engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle. Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.**

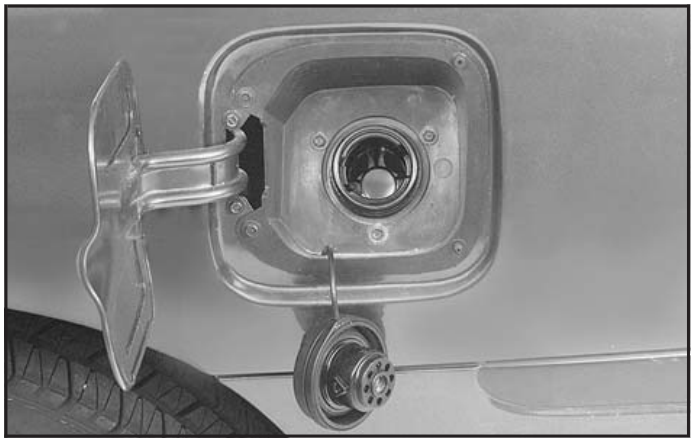


Turn your vehicle off to refuel.

The fuel cap is located behind a hinged door on the driver's side of the vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



While refueling, let the fuel cap hang by the tether below the fuel fill opening.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly to the left (counterclockwise).

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any "hiss" noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.**

Be careful not to spill fuel. Don't top off or overfill your tank, and wait a few seconds after you've finished pumping before you remove the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle on page 5-97*. When filling the tank do not overfill by squeezing in much more fuel after the pump shuts off.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you put the fuel cap back on, turn it to the right (clockwise) until you hear a clicking sound. Make sure you fully install the cap. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-39*.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.**

***Notice:*** **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage your fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-39*.**

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the gasoline vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:**

- **Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.**
- **Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed or on any surface other than the ground.**
- **Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.**
- **Do not smoke while pumping gasoline.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Checking Things Under the Hood

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.**

## Hood Release

To open the hood do the following:

1. Pull the handle located inside the vehicle near the parking brake pedal.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and release the secondary hood release.
3. Lift the hood.

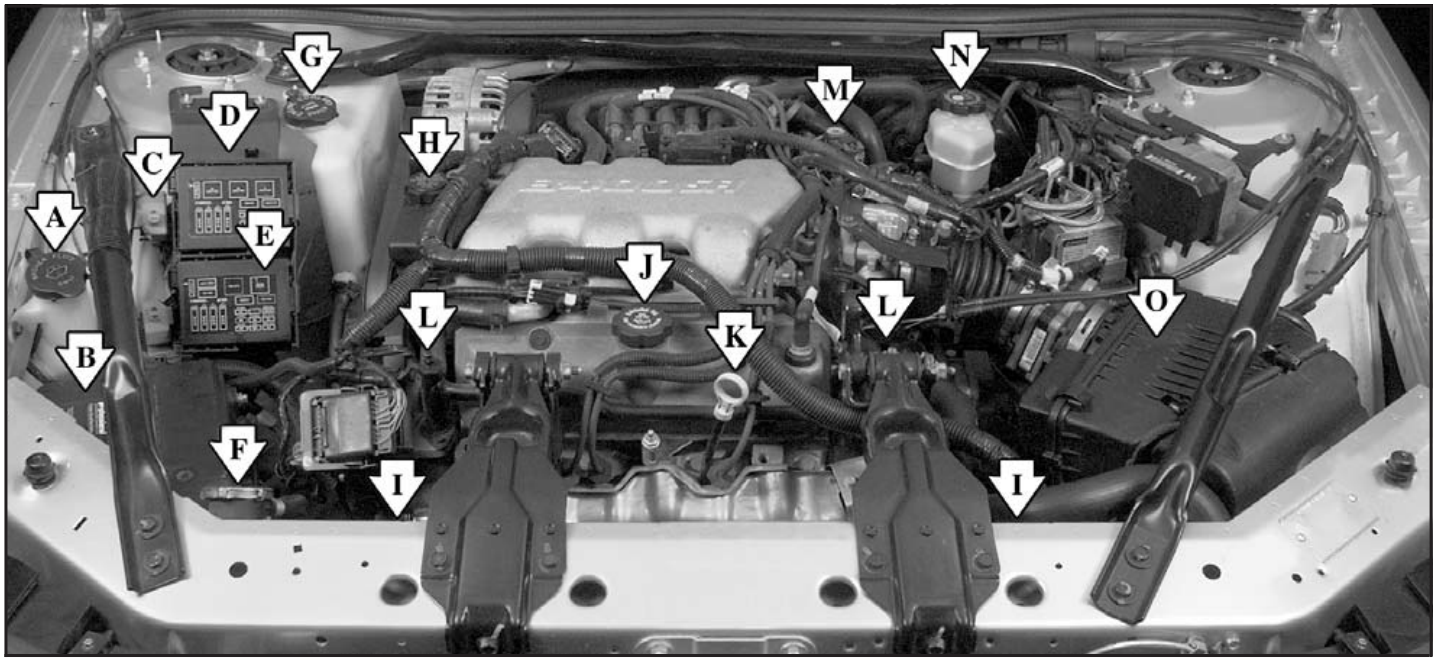
   Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then pull the hood down and close it firmly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the 3400 V6 (Code E) engine, you'll see the following:






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir.
See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-48*.

B. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-53*.

C. Remote Positive (+) Terminal.
See *Jump Starting on page 5-54*.

D. Upper Underhood Fuse Block.
See “Upperhood Fuse Block (Upper)” under *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*.

E. Lower Underhood Fuse Block.
See “Underhood Fuse Block (Lower)” under *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*.

F. Radiator Pressure Cap.
See *Radiator Pressure Cap on page 5-34*.

G. Engine Coolant Recovery Tank.
See *Cooling System on page 5-37*.

H. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir.
See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-47*.

I. Electric Cooling Fan.
See *Cooling Systemon page 5-37*.

J. Engine Oil Fill Cap.
See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.

K. Engine Oil Dipstick.
See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.

L. Bleed Valves (underneath engine shield).
See “How to Add Coolant to the Radiator” under *Cooling System on page 5-37*.

M. Transaxle Fluid Dipstick.
See *Automatic Transaxle Fluid on page 5-28*.

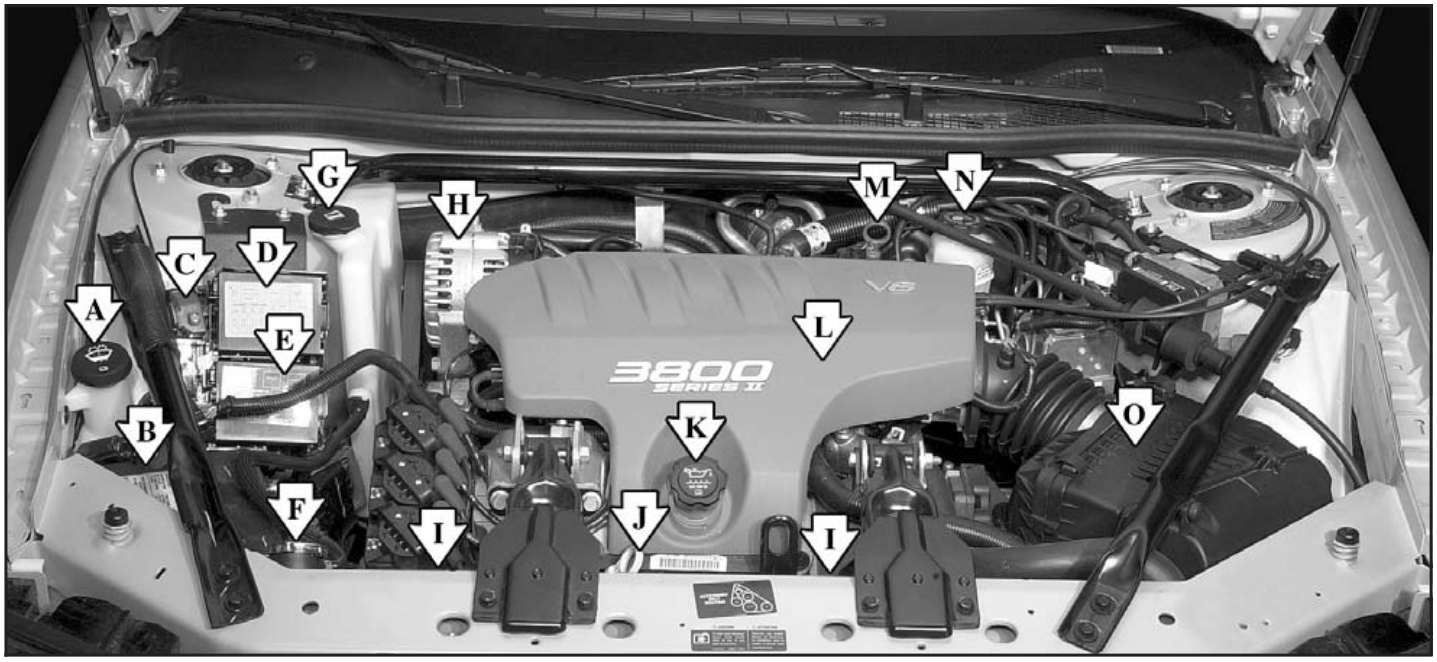
N. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir.
See *Brakes on page 5-50*.

O. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter.
See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-26*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you open the hood on the 3800 V6 (Code K) engine, you'll see the following:






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir.
See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-48*.

B. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-53*.

C. Remote Positive (+) Terminal.
See *Jump Starting on page 5-54*.

D. Upper Underhood Fuse Block.
See “Upperhood Fuse Block (Upper)” under *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*.

E. Lower Underhood Fuse Block.
See “Underhood Fuse Block (Lower)” under *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*.

F. Radiator Pressure Cap.
See *Radiator Pressure Cap on page 5-34*.

G. Engine Coolant Recovery Tank.
See *Cooling System on page 5-37*

H. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
(low in engine compartment).
See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-47*.

I. Electric Cooling Fan.
See *Cooling System on page 5-37*.

J. Engine Oil Dipstick.
See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.

K. Engine Oil Fill Cap.
See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.

L. Bleed Valves (underneath engine shield).
See “How to Add Coolant to the Radiator” under *Cooling System on page 5-37*.

M. Transaxle Fluid Dipstick.
See *Automatic Transaxle Fluid on page 5-28*.

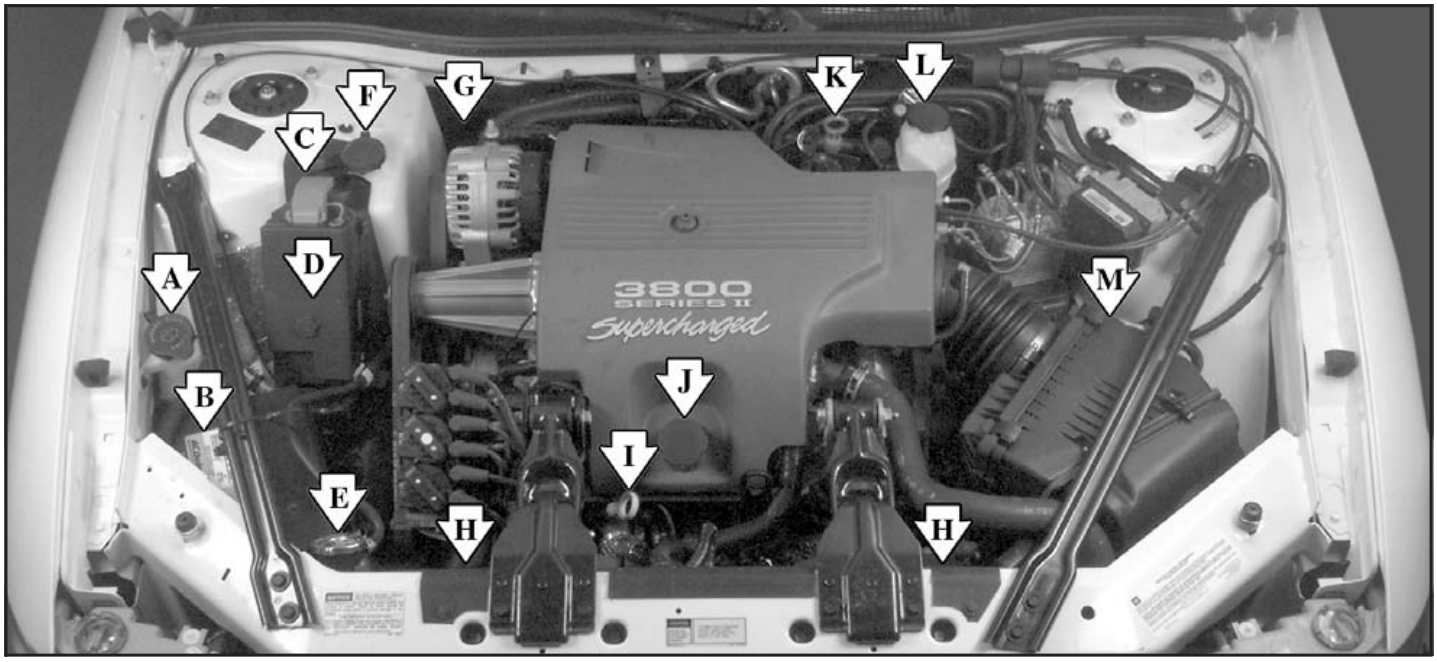
N. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir.
See *Brakes on page 5-50*.

O. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter.
See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-26*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you open the hood on the 3800 V6 Supercharged (Code 1) engine, you'll see the following:






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir.
See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-48*.

B. Battery.
See *Battery on page 5-53*.

C. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal.
See *Battery on page 5-53*.

D. Underhood Electrical Center.
See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-104*.

E. Radiator Pressure Cap.
See *Cooling System on page 5-37*.

F. Engine Coolant Recovery Tank.
See *Cooling System on page 5-37*.

G. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (Below Generator).
See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-47*.

H. Electric Cooling Fan.
See *Cooling System on page 5-37*.

I. Engine Oil Dipstick.
See *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.

J. Engine Oil Fill Cap.
See *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.

K. Automatic Transaxle Fluid Dipstick.
See *Automatic Transaxle Fluid on page 5-28*.

L. Brake Fluid Reservoir.
See *Automatic Transaxle Fluid on page 5-28*.

M. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter.
See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-26*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Engine Oil

## Checking Engine Oil

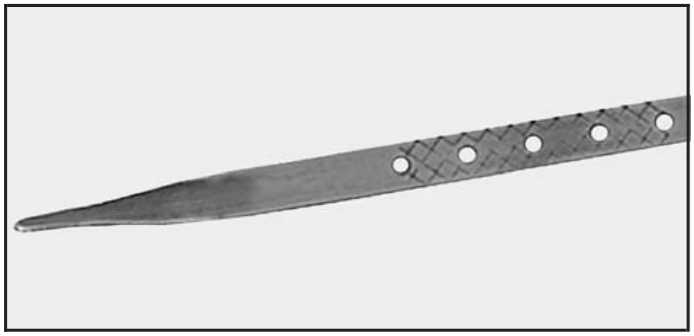
It is a good idea to check your engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you don't, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.

Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

**3400 (Code E) V6 Engine**



**3800 (Code K) V6 Engine**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is at or below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, then you will need to add at least one quart of oil. But you must use the right kind. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-110*.

***Notice:*** **Do not add too much oil. If your engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, your engine could be damaged.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Be sure to add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range in the cross-hatched area. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you are through.



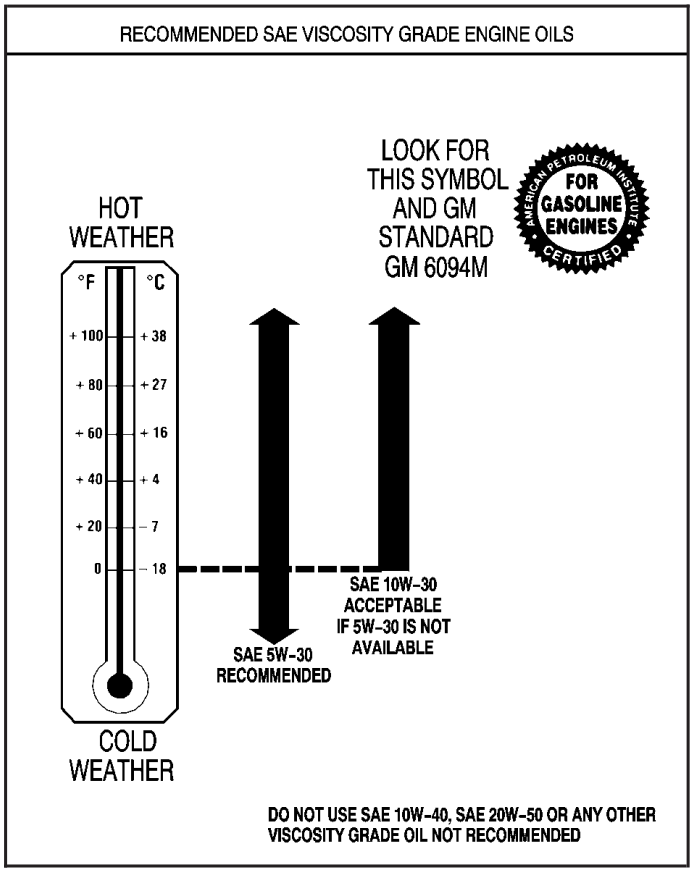
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

Look for two things:

- GM6094M

  Your vehicle's engine requires oil meeting GM Standard GM6094M. You should look for and use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- SAE 5W-30

  As shown in the viscosity chart, SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle. However, if it is going to be 0°F (–18°C) or above and SAE 5W-30 is not available, you may use SAE 10W-30.

  These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

Oils meeting these requirements should also have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

You should look for this information on the oil container, and use *only* those oils that are identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and have the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container.

***Notice:*** **Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.**

GM Goodwrench® oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle.

If you are in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below –20°F (–29°C), it is recommended that you use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 oil. Both will provide easier cold starting and better protection for your engine at extremely low temperatures.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Engine Oil Additives

Do not add anything to your oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all you will need for good performance and engine protection.

## When to Change Engine Oil (GM Oil Life System)

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL message will come on. Change your oil as soon as possible within the next two times you stop for fuel. It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has GM-trained service people who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system. It is also important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change your oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

### How to Reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL Message

The GM Oil Life System calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where you change your oil prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL message being turned on, reset the system.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After changing the engine oil, the system must be reset. To reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message use one of the following procedures:

## Using the Radio

1. Turn the ignition to ACC or ON, with the radio off.
2. Press and hold the TUNE DISP knob on the radio for at least five seconds until SETTINGS is displayed.
3. Press the SEEK PSCAN up or down arrow to scroll through the main menu.
4. Scroll until OIL LIFE appears on the display.
5. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT buttons to enter the submenu. RESET will be displayed.
6. Press the TUNE DISP knob to reset. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting and DONE will be displayed for one second.
7. Once the indicator has been reset, scroll until EXIT appears on the display.
8. Press the TUNE DISP knob to exit programming. A chime will be heard to verify the exit.
9. Turn the key to OFF.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message comes back on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

## Using the Accelerator Pedal

1. Turn the ignition to ON, with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal slowly three times within five seconds. If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message flashes, the system is reset. However, if it stays on, it did not reset. Repeat the procedure.
3. Turn the key to OFF.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message comes back on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.



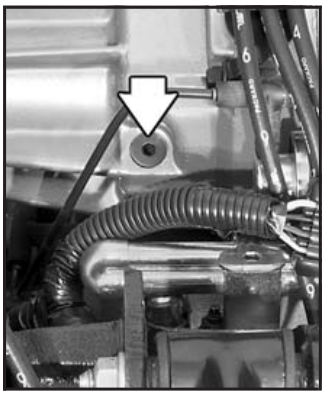
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that may be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of your used oil, ask your dealer, a service station or a local recycling center for help.

## Supercharger Oil



Unless you are technically qualified and have the proper tools, you should let your dealer or a qualified service center perform this maintenance.

## When to Check

Check oil level every 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or every 36 months, whichever occurs first.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## What Kind of Oil to Use

Use only the recommended supercharger oil. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

## How to Check and Add Oil

Park the vehicle on a level surface. Check oil only when the engine is cold. Allow the engine to cool two to three hours after running.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you remove the supercharger oil fill plug while the engine is hot, pressure may cause hot oil to blow out of the oil fill hole. You may be burned. Do not remove the plug until the engine cools.**

1. Clean the area around the oil fill plug before removing it.
2. Remove the oil fill plug.
3. The oil level is correct when it just reaches the bottom of the threads of the inspection hole.
4. Replace the oil plug with the O-ring in place. Tighten to 88 lb-in (10 N•m ).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

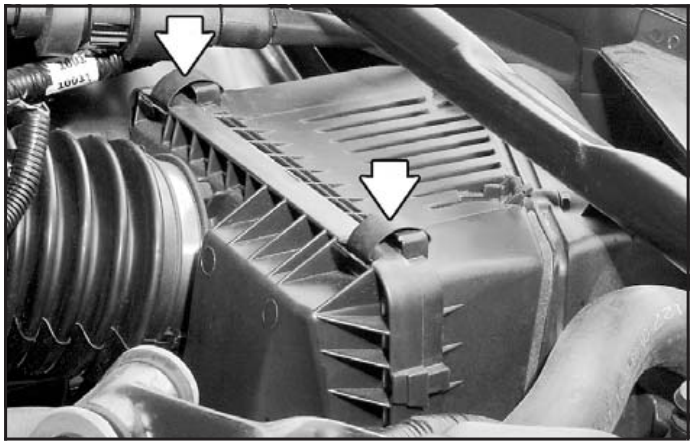
## When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at every oil change and replace at the first oil change after 25,000 miles (40 000 km).

## How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect the air cleaner/filter remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains “caked” with dirt, a new filter is required.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for location of air cleaner/filter.



1. To check or replace the engine air cleaner/filter do the following:

   Loosen the two clips on the top of the engine air cleaner/filter housing and lift the filter cover tabs out of the housing.
2. Push the filter cover housing toward the engine.
3. Pull out the filter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Check or install a new engine air cleaner/filter. See *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*.
5. To reinstall the cover, position the tabs through the slots on the housing. A notch on the sides of the filter cover will indicate the correct engagement. Reinstall the two clips on the top of the housing when you are finished.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to replace the air filter.

See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air, it helps to stop flame if the engine backfires.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.**

***Notice:*** **If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into your engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Automatic Transaxle Fluid

## When to Check and Change

A good time to check your automatic transaxle fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change both the fluid and filter every 50,000 miles (83 000 km) if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.
- In hilly or mountainous terrain.
- When doing frequent trailer towing.
- Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

If you do not use your vehicle under any of these conditions, change the fluid and filter at 100,000 miles (166 000 km).

See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

## How to Check

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at the dealership service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

***Notice:*** **Too much or too little fluid can damage the transaxle. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transaxle to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check the transaxle fluid.**

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transaxle fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 90°F (32°C).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic – especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 180°F to 200°F (82°C to 93°C).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 15 miles (24 km) when outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). If it's colder than 50°F (10°C), you may have to drive longer.

## Checking the Fluid Level

Prepare your vehicle as follows:

- Park your vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
- With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in PARK (P).
- With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in PARK (P).
- Let the engine run at idle for three to five minutes.

Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:

**3400 V6 Engine**

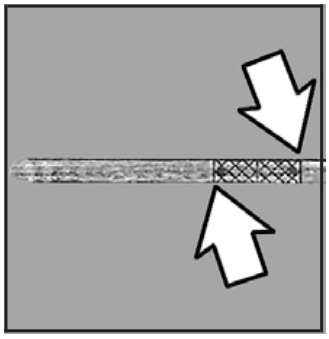
**3800 V6 Engine**

The transaxle fluid dipstick handle is the black loop near the rear of the engine compartment, toward the center. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

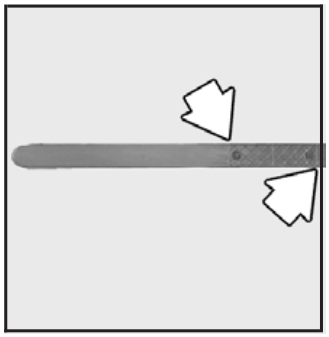
1. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
2. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



**3400 V6 Engine**



**3800 V6 Engine**

3. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the cross-hatched area.
4. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way.

## How to Add Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transaxle fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level into the cross-hatched area on the dipstick.

1. Pull out the dipstick.
2. Using a long-neck funnel, add enough fluid at the dipstick hole to bring it to the proper level.

   It doesn't take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5 L). *Don't overfill.*



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Notice:*** **Use of automatic transaxle fluid labeled other than DEXRON®-III may damage your vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEXRON®-III labeled automatic transaxle fluid.**

3. After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under “How to Check” earlier in this section.
4. When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way.

## Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for 5 years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL® extended life coolant.

The following explains your cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If you have a problem with engine overheating or if you need to add coolant to your radiator, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-34*.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to –34°F (–37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Let the warning lights and gages work as they should.

***Notice:*** **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL®(silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half *clean, drinkable water* and one-half DEX-COOL® coolant which won't damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you don't need to add anything else.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.**

***Notice:*** **If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts.**

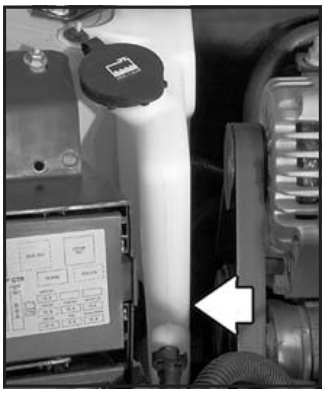
If you have to add coolant more than four times a year, have your dealer check your cooling system.

***Notice:*** **If you use the proper coolant, you do not have to add extra inhibitors or additives which claim to improve the system. These can be harmful.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Checking Coolant



The coolant recovery tank is located between the power steering fluid reservoir and the underhood fuse block in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be at the COLD mark or a little higher. When your engine is warm, the level should be up to the HOT mark or a little higher.

### Adding Coolant

If you need more coolant, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture *at the coolant recovery tank,* but be careful not to spill it.

If the coolant recovery tank is completely empty, add coolant to the radiator. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-34*.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Turning the radiator pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. With the coolant recovery tank, you will almost never have to add coolant at the radiator. Never turn the radiator pressure cap — even a little — when the engine and radiator are hot.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.**

Occasionally check the coolant level in the radiator. For information on how to add coolant to the radiator, see *Cooling System on page 5-37*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Radiator Pressure Cap

***Notice:*** **The radiator cap on your vehicle is a pressure-type cap and must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss and possible engine damage from overheating. Be sure the arrows on the cap line up with the overflow tube on the radiator filler neck.**

The radiator pressure cap is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger's side, near the diagonal cross brace. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

## Engine Overheating

You will find a coolant temperature gage and a warning message about a hot engine on your instrument panel cluster. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-38* and *Hot Coolant Temperature Warning Message on page 3-45*.

## Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

This emergency operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency situation. If an overheated engine condition exists, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a significant loss in power and engine performance. The low coolant light may come on and the temperature gage will indicate an overheat condition exists. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

***Notice:*** **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 5-18*.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.**

**If you keep driving when your engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.**

**See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" under *Engine Overheating on page 5-34* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

***Notice:*** **If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty. See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" under *Engine Overheating on page 5-34* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

An overheat warning along with a low coolant message can indicate a serious problem.

If you get an engine overheat warning, but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer.

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in NEUTRAL (N) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) and let the engine idle.
2. Turn on your heater to full hot at the highest fan speed and open the window as necessary.

If you no longer have the overheat warning, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about 10 minutes. If the warning doesn't come back on, you can drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park your vehicle right away.

If there's still no sign of steam, you can idle the engine for three minutes while you're parked. If you still have the warning, *turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle* until it cools down. Also, see "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" listed previously in this section.

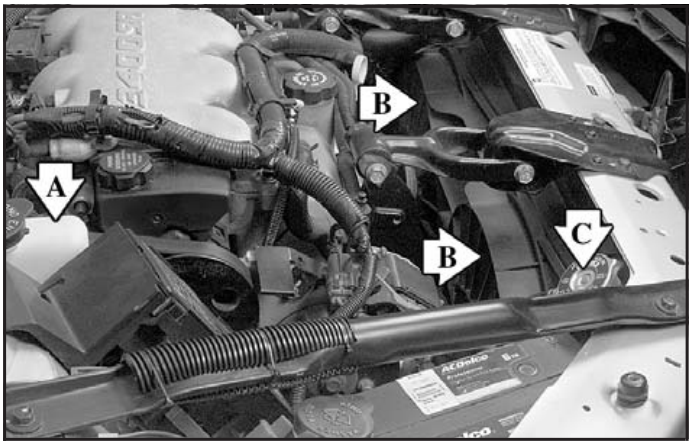
You may decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.



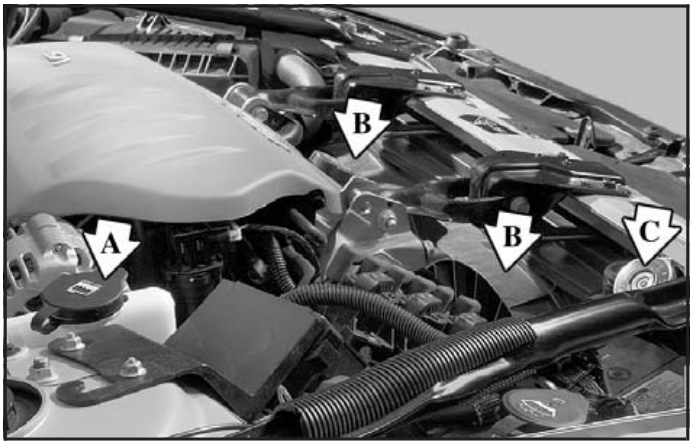
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cooling System

When you decide it's safe to lift the hood, here's what you'll see:




A. Coolant Recovery Tank
B. Electric Engine Cooling Fan
C. Radiator Cap




**3800 V6 Engine**

A. Coolant Recovery Tank
B. Electric Engine Cooling Fan
C. Radiator Pressure Cap

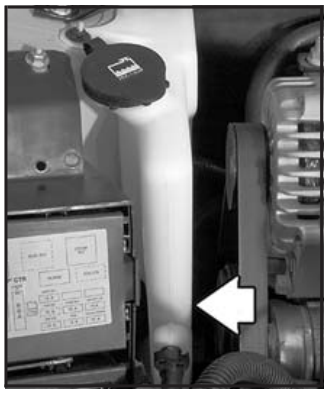


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.**

If the coolant inside the coolant recovery tank is boiling, don't do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.



The coolant level should be at or above the COLD mark on the coolant recovery tank. To check the coolant level, look for the COLD mark on the side of the coolant recovery tank that faces the engine.

Check to make sure that the coolant level is up to the COLD fill level on the side of the coolant recovery tank. If it isn't, you may have a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump or somewhere else in the cooling system.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.**

**Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.**

If there seems to be no leak, with the engine on, check to see if the electric engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans should be running. If they aren't, your vehicle needs service.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Notice:*** **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by your warranty. See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" in the Index for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

***Notice:*** **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL®(silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.**

## How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Recovery Tank

If you haven't found a problem yet, but the coolant level isn't at the COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of *clean, drinkable water* and DEX-COOL® engine coolant at the coolant recovery tank. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-31* for more information.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.**

***Notice:*** **In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The coolant recovery tank is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.**

When the coolant in the coolant recovery tank is at the COLD mark, start your vehicle.

If the overheat warning continues, there's one more thing you can try. You can add the proper coolant mixture directly to the radiator, but be sure the cooling system is cool before you do it.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the radiator pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the radiator pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and radiator pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## How to Add Coolant to the Radiator

***Notice:*** **Your engine has a specific radiator fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause your engine to overheat and be severely damaged.**

The radiator pressure cap is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle, near the diagonal cross brace. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

1. You can remove the radiator pressure cap when the cooling system, including the radiator pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise until it first stops. (Don't press down while turning the pressure cap.)

   If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.

2. Then keep turning the pressure cap, but now push down as you turn it. Remove the pressure cap.

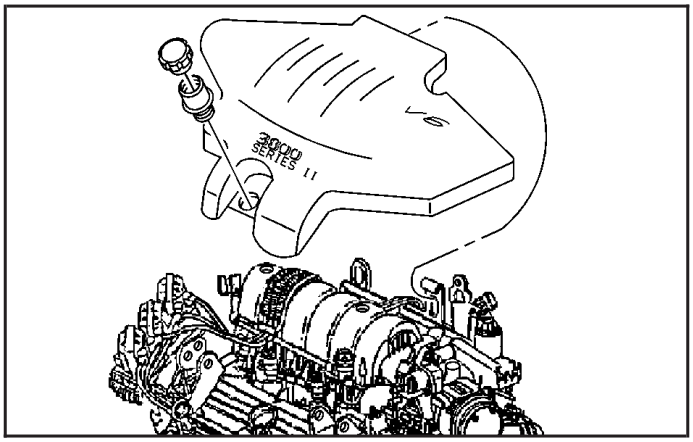


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.**

3. If you have the 3800 V6 engine, remove the 3800 Series II V6 engine cover shield to access the bleed valve.



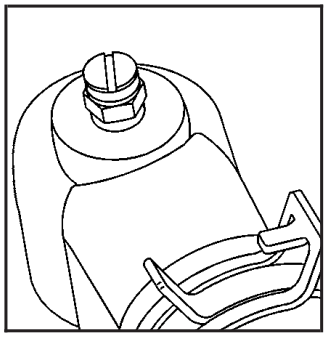

A. Clean the area around the engine oil fill tube and cap before removing. Twist the oil fill tube, with cap attached, counterclockwise and remove it.

B. Lift the engine cover shield at the front, slide the catch tab out of the engine bracket and remove the cover shield.

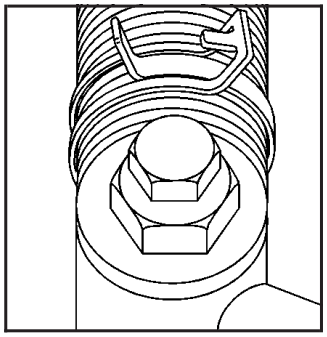
C. Put the oil fill tube, with cap attached, in the valve cover oil fill hole until you're ready to replace the cover shield.



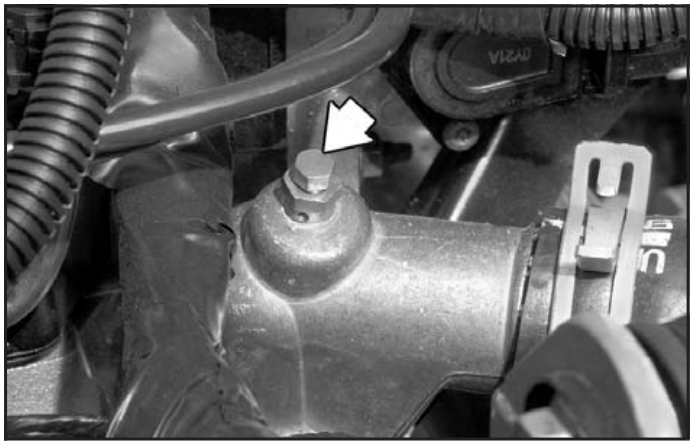
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



**3400 V6 Bleed Valve #1**



**3400 V6 Bleed Valve #2**



**3800 V6 Bleed Valve**

4. After the engine cools, open the coolant air bleed valve or valves.

   3400 V6 engine: There are two bleed valves.
   One is located on the thermostat housing.
   The other is located on the thermostat bypass tube.

   3800 V6 engine: There is one bleed valve.
   It is located on the thermostat housing.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Fill the radiator with the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture, up to the base of the filler neck. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-31* for more information about the proper coolant mixture.

   If you see a stream of coolant coming from an air bleed valve, close the valve. Otherwise, close the valves after the radiator is filled.

6. Rinse or wipe any spilled coolant from the engine and the compartment.

7. If you have the 3800 V6 engine, replace the 3800 Series II V6 engine cover shield.
   - 7.1. Remove the oil fill tube, with cap attached, from the valve cover.
   - 7.2. Insert the catch tab on the cover shield under the bracket on the engine.
   - 7.3. Place the hole in the cover shield over the hole in the valve cover. Install oil fill tube and cap by twisting clockwise.

8. Then fill the coolant recovery tank to the COLD mark.
9. Put the cap back on the coolant recovery tank, but leave the radiator pressure cap off.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

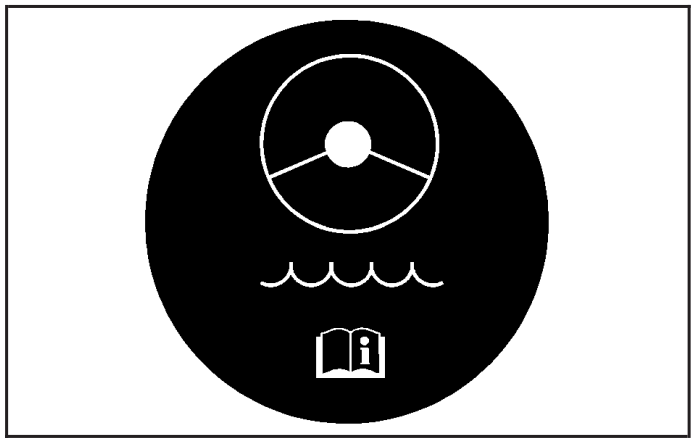
10. Start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fans.
11. By this time, the coolant level inside the radiator filler neck may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture through the filler neck until the level reaches the base of the filler neck.
12. Then replace the pressure cap. At any time during this procedure if coolant begins to flow out of the filler neck, reinstall the pressure cap. Be sure the arrow on the pressure cap lines up like this.
13. Check the coolant in the recovery tank. The level in the coolant recovery tank should be at the HOT mark when the engine is hot or at the COLD mark when the engine is cold.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Power Steering Fluid

The power steering fluid reservoir is located toward the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger's side of the vehicle.



It will have the above symbol on its cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12*.

## When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## How to Check Power Steering Fluid

Turn the key off, let the engine compartment cool down, wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean, then unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag. Replace the cap and completely tighten it. Then remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

When the 3400 V6 engine compartment is hot, the level should be at the H (hot) mark. When it's cold, the level should be at the C (cold) mark. If the fluid is at the ADD mark, you should add fluid.

For the 3800 V6 engine, the level should be at the HOT mark when the engine compartment is hot. If the fluid is at the ADD mark, you should add fluid.

### What to Use

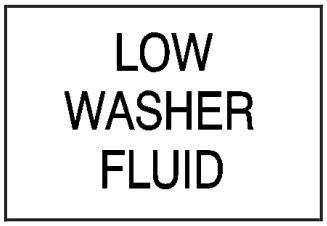
To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*. Always use the proper fluid. Failure to use the proper fluid can cause leaks and damage hoses and seals.

## Windshield Washer Fluid

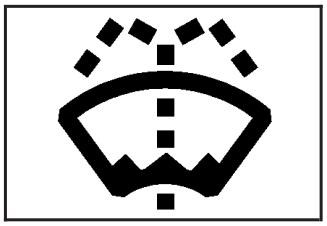
### What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

### Adding Washer Fluid




**United States**



**Canada**

When this message is displayed, it means the vehicle is low on windshield washer fluid. You should add more windshield washer fluid soon.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

***Notice:***

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill your washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage your washer system and paint.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Brakes

## Brake Fluid

Your brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake system. If it is, you should have your brake system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later your brakes will not work well, or will not work at all.

So, it is not a good idea to “top off” your brake fluid. Adding brake fluid will not correct a leak. If you add fluid when your linings are worn, then you will have too much fluid when you get new brake linings. You should add (or remove) brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you have too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.**

When your brake fluid falls to a low level, your brake warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-35*.

## What to Add

When you do need brake fluid, use only DOT-3 brake fluid. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This will help keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**With the wrong kind of fluid in your brake system, your brakes may not work well, or they may not even work at all. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.**

***Notice:***

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Appearance Care on page 5-94*.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Brake Wear

Your vehicle has four-wheel disc brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving (except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly).

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**The brake wear warning sound means that soon your brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.**

***Notice:*** **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with your brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to GM torque specifications.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

### Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign of brake trouble.

### Brake Adjustment

Every time you apply the brakes, with or without the vehicle moving, your brakes adjust for wear.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality GM brake parts. When you replace parts of your braking system — for example, when your brake linings wear down and you need new ones put in — be sure you get new approved GM replacement parts. If you do not, your brakes may no longer work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between your front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance you have come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

## Battery

Your new vehicle comes with a maintenance free ACDelco® battery. When it is time for a new battery, get one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. We recommend an ACDelco® battery. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for battery location.

***Warning:*** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

## Vehicle Storage

If you are not going to drive your vehicle for 25 days or more, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This will help keep your battery from running down.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 5-54* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.**

Contact your dealer to learn how to prepare your vehicle for longer storage periods.

Also, for your audio system, see *Theft-Deterrent Feature on page 3-91*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Jump Starting

If your battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to follow the steps below to do it safely.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:**

- **They contain acid that can burn you.**
- **They contain gas that can explode or ignite.**
- **They contain enough electricity to burn you.**

**If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.**

***Notice:*** **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that would not be covered by your warranty.**

**Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage your vehicle.**

***Notice:*** **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.
2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles aren't touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you don't want. You wouldn't be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transaxle in PARK (P) or a manual transaxle in NEUTRAL before setting the parking brake.

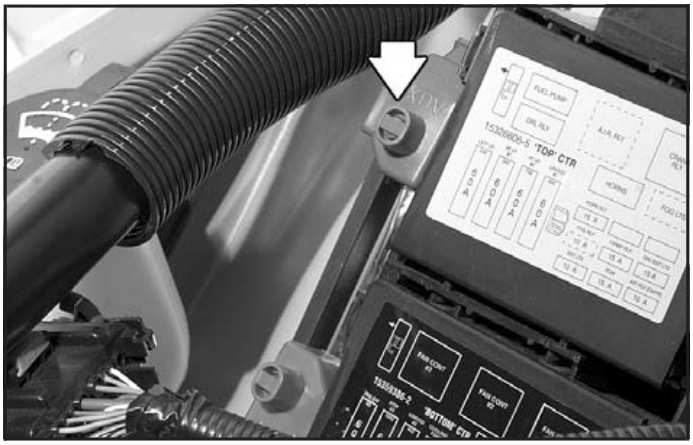


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Notice:*** **If you leave your radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always turn off your radio and other accessories when jump starting your vehicle.**

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or in the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all lamps that aren't needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save your radio!
4. Open the hoods and locate the batteries. Find the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations on each vehicle.

   You will not need to access your battery for jump starting. Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) jump starting terminal for that purpose. The remote positive (+) terminal is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle, next to the upper underhood fuse block. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.




To uncover the remote positive (+) terminal, lift the plastic cap. You should always use the remote positive (+) terminal instead of the positive (+) terminal on the battery.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.**

**Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the ACDelco® battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.**

**Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.**

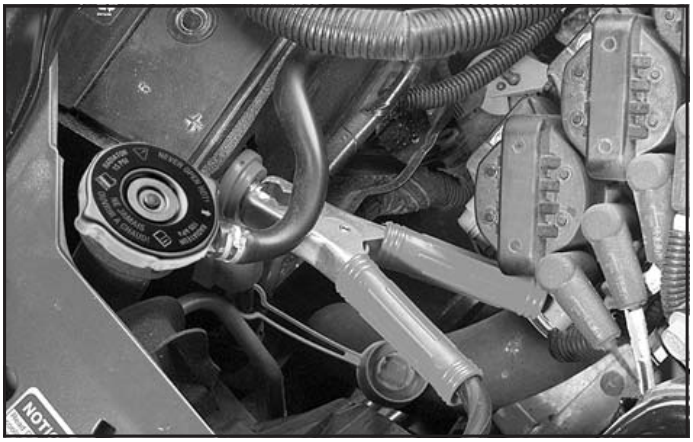
5. Check that the jumper cables don't have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged, too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

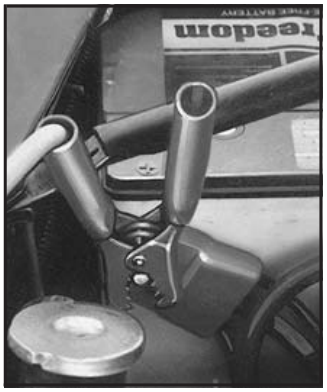
   Don't connect positive (+) to negative (–), or you'll get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts, too. And don't connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal location of the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.




7. Don't let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal location of the vehicle with the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal location of the vehicle with the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

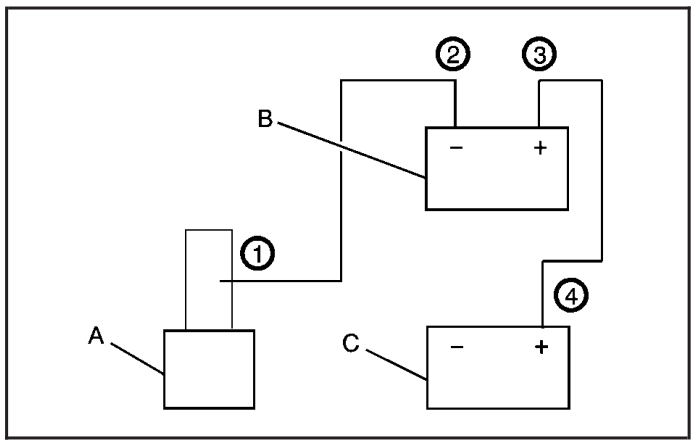
Don't let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable *doesn't* go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable at least 18 inches (45 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it won't start after a few tries, it probably needs service.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Notice:*** **If the jumper cables are removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**




**Jumper Cable Removal**

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part
B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal
C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the remote positive (+) terminal cover to its original position.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Headlamp Aiming

If your vehicle is damaged in an accident, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low beam may be necessary if it is difficult to see lane markers (for horizontal aim), or if oncoming drivers flash their high beams at you (for vertical aim). If you believe your headlamps need to be re-aimed, we recommend that you take your vehicle to the dealer for service.

## Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulb, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 5-63*.

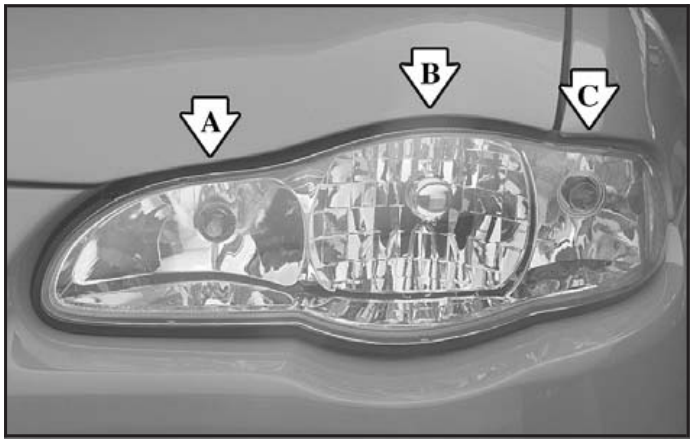
For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

### Halogen Bulbs

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.**

### Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker, and Parking Lamps

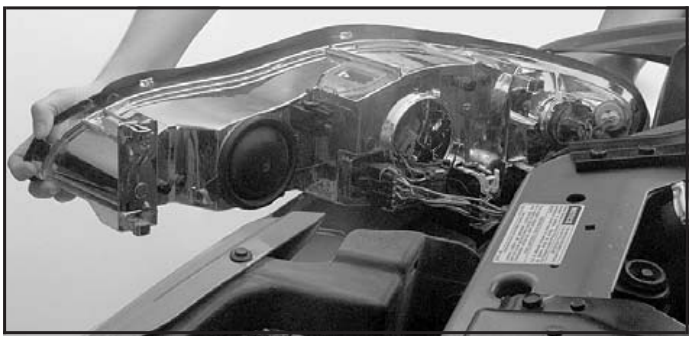



A. High-Beam Headlamp
B. Low-Beam Headlamp
C. Parking/Turn Signal and Sidemarker Lamp



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the air baffle.
3. Remove the two headlamp fasteners by pulling up on them.

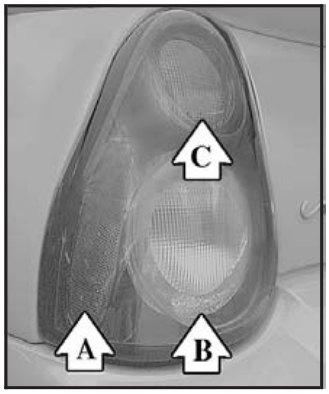


4. Gently pull the headlamp assembly away from the vehicle and remove the electrical connector.
5. Remove the round dust caps to gain access to the bulbs.
6. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it from the retaining ring by gently pulling it away from the headlamp assembly.
7. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by raising the lock tab and pulling the connector away from the bulb's base.
8. Install the electrical connector to the new bulb.
9. Install the new bulb by inserting the smallest tab on the bulb base into the matching notch in the retaining ring. Turn the bulb a quarter-turn clockwise until it stops.
10. Reverse Steps 1 through 5 to reinstall the headlamp assembly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Sidemarker Lamps




A. Rear Sidemarker Lamp
B. Taillamp/Stoplamp
C. Turn Signal Lamp

1. Open the trunk. If your vehicle has a convenience net, unhook the net from the upper wing nut.
2. Remove the nut and convenience net.
3. Pull the carpet away from the rear of the vehicle.
4. Unscrew the two remaining hex nuts.
5. Pull the assembly from the body carefully.
6. To remove a socket, turn it counterclockwise and pull it out.
7. Pull the bulb out. Do not twist it.
8. Push the new bulb into the socket.
9. Push the socket back into the assembly. Tighten the socket by turning it clockwise.
10. Reinstall the assembly and the two lower wing nuts. Make sure that the wires are not pinched between the body of the vehicle and the mounting screws.
11. Reinstall the carpeting.
12. Reinstall the upper (convenience net) wing nut and reattach convenience net, if equipped.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Back-Up Lamps

The back-up lamps are located in the rear bumper.

1. Open the trunk.
2. Remove the two screws.
3. Pull the assembly from the body of the vehicle.
4. To remove a socket, turn the socket counterclockwise and pull it out.
5. Pull the old bulb out. Do not twist it.
6. Push the new bulb into the socket.
7. Push the socket back into the assembly. Tighten the socket by turning it clockwise.
8. Reinstall the assembly with the two screws.

## Replacement Bulbs

| Exterior Lamps | Bulb Number |
|---|---|
| Back-Up | 921 |
| Front Park/Turn Signal | 3357NAK or 3457NAK |
| Front Sidemarker Lamps | 194 |
| Headlamps, High-Beam | 9005 |
| Headlamps, Low-Beam | 9006 |
| Rear Sidemarker Lamps | 168 |
| Taillamps/Stoplamps/Turn Signal | 3057 |
| For any bulb not listed here, contact you dealer. | |



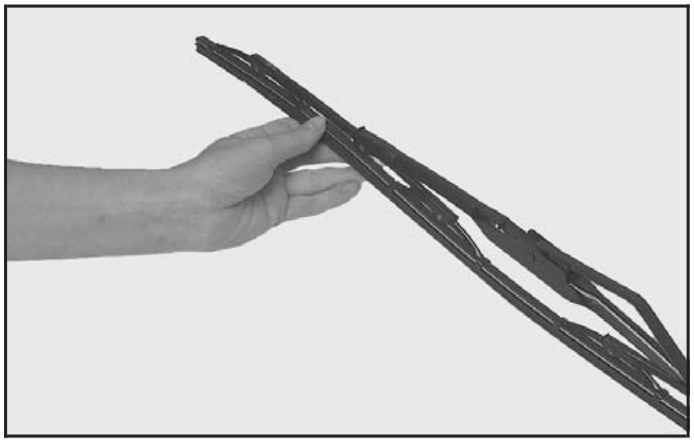
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected at least twice a year for wear or cracking. See “Windshield Wipers, Blade Check” under *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*. Here’s how to remove the wiper blades:

1. Turn on the wipers to the low wipe setting.
2. Turn off the ignition while the wipers are at the outer positions of the wiper pattern. The blades are more accessible for removal/replacement while in this position.
3. Pull the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.



4. While holding the wiper arm away from the glass, push the release clip from under the blade connecting point and pull the old blade assembly down toward the glass to remove it from the wiper arm.
5. Push the new wiper blade securely on the wiper arm until you hear the release clip “click” into place.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your GM Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer's booklet included with your vehicle's Owner's Manual.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.**

- **Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much friction. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See "Loading Your Vehicle" in the Index.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

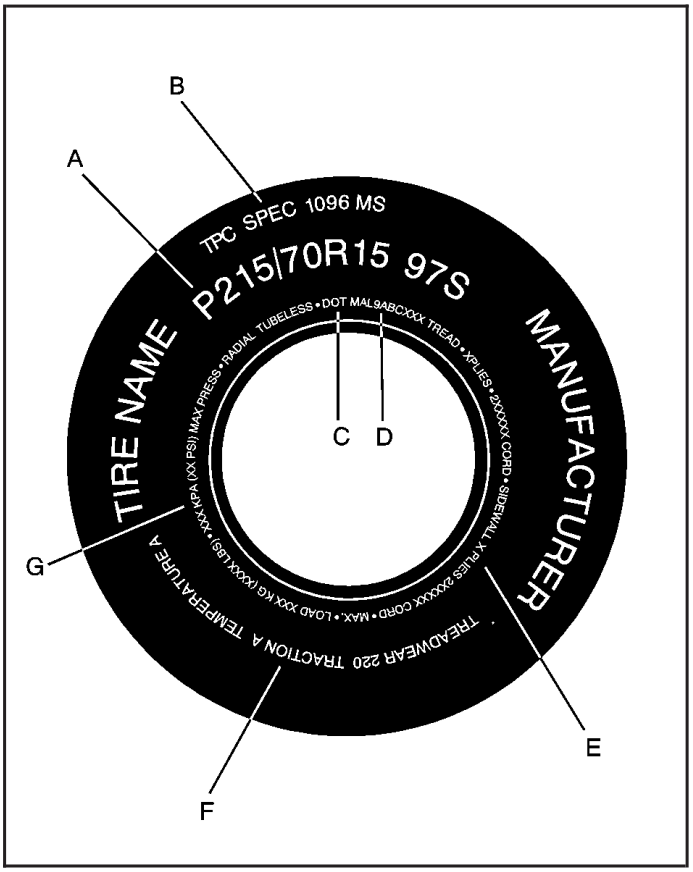
- **Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold.**
- **Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples below show a typical passenger car tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.




**Passenger Car Tire Example**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**(A) Tire Size:** The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

**(B) Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec):** Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

**(C) Department of Transportation (DOT):** The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

**(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN):** The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

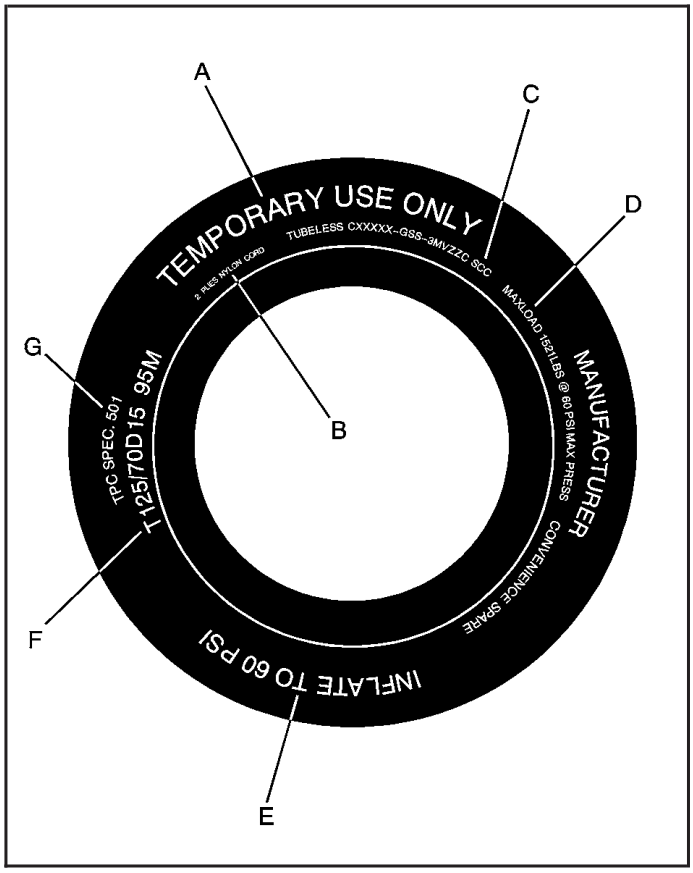
**(E) Tire Ply Material:** The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

**(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG):** Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-77*.

**(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit:** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load. For more information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-72* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**Compact Spare Tire Example**

**(A) Temporary Use Only:** The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and should not be driven at speeds over 65 mph (105 km/h). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-93* and *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 5-81*.

**(B) Tire Ply Material:** The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

**(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN):** The Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

**(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit:** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-93* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

**(E) Tire Inflation:** The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-72*.



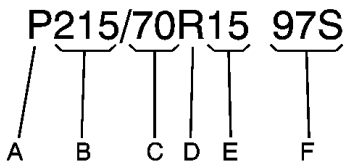
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**(F) Tire Size:** A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type and service description. The letter "T" as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

**(G) Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec):** Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

## Tire Size

The following illustration shows an example of a typical passenger car tire size.




**(A) P-Metric Tire:** The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter "P" as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U. S. Tire and Rim Association.

**(B) Tire Width:** The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

**(C) Aspect Ratio:** A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is "70," as shown in item "C" of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 70% as high as it is wide.

**(D) Construction Code:** A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

**(E) Rim Diameter:** Diameter of the wheel in inches.

**(F) Service Description:** These characters represent the load range and the speed rating of a tire. The load range represents the load carrying capacity a tire is certified to carry. The load index can range from 1 to 279. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load. Speed ratings range from "A" to "Z".



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Tire Terminology and Definitions

**Air Pressure:** The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

**Accessory Weight:** This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio:** The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

**Belt:** A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead:** The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Cold Inflation Pressure:** The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-72*.

**Curb Weight:** This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings:** A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand and date of production.

**GVWR:** Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

**GAWR FRT:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

**GAWR RR:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall:** The side of an asymmetrical tire that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa):** The metric unit for air pressure. There are 6.9 kPa's to one psi.

**Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Load Index:** An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure:** The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating:** The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight:** The sum of curb weight; accessory weight; vehicle capacity weight; and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight:** The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 pounds (68 kg). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

**Occupant Distribution:** Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall:** The side of a asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand and or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure:** Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure and shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-72* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

**Radial Ply tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Rim:** A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Sidewall:** The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating:** An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

**Traction:** The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread:** The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators:** Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars," that show across the tread of a tire when only 2/32 inch of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-76*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**UTQGS:** Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards, a tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-77*.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight:** The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs. (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire:** Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Placard:** A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

## Inflation - Tire Pressure

The tire and loading information label, shows the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they're cold. "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*, for the location of your vehicle's tire and loading information label.

***Notice:*** **Don't let anyone tell you that underinflation or overinflation is all right. It's not. If your tires don't have enough air (underinflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Bad wear**
- **Bad handling**
- **Bad fuel economy**

**If your tires have too much air (overinflation), you can get the following:**

- **Unusual wear**
- **Bad handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

## When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more.

Don't forget your compact spare tire. It should be at 60 psi (420 kPa).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You can't tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

# Tire Pressure Monitor System

Your vehicle has the tire pressure monitor system and it can alert you to a large change in the pressure of one tire. The system "learns" the pressure at each tire throughout the operating speed range of your vehicle.

The system normally takes between 45 and 90 minutes of driving to learn the tire pressures. This time may be longer depending on your individual driving habits. Learning need not be accumulated during a single trip. Once learned, the system will remember the tire pressures until the system is recalibrated.

After the system has learned tire pressures with properly inflated tires, the LOW TIRE PRESSURE message will come on if the pressure in one tire becomes 12 psi (83 kPa) lower than the other three tires. The tire pressure monitor system won't alert you if the pressure in more than one tire is low, if the system is not properly calibrated, or if the vehicle is moving faster than 70 mph (110 km/h).

The tire pressure monitor system detects differences in tire rotation speeds that are caused by changes in tire pressure. The system can alert you about a low tire — but it doesn't replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tires on page 5-65*.

When the LOW TIRE PRESSURE message comes on, you should stop as soon as you can and check all your tires for damage. If a tire is flat, see *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 5-81*. Also check the tire pressure in all four tires as soon as you can. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-72*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The LOW TIRE PRESSURE message will also be displayed while the ignition is on until you reset (calibrate) the system.

Don't reset the tire pressure monitor system without first correcting the cause of the problem and checking and adjusting the pressure in all four tires. If you reset the system when the tire pressures are incorrect, the system will not work properly and may not alert you when a tire is low.

Any time you adjust a tire's pressure, rotate your tires, or have one or more tires repaired or replaced, you'll need to reset (calibrate) the tire pressure monitor system. You'll also need to reset the system whenever you buy new tires and whenever the vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

To reset (calibrate) the system: The tire pressure monitor system can be reset two ways. With the ignition position at ON, pull the interior lamps control to the ON and OFF settings three times.

It can also be reset through the radio using the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition to ACC or ON and turn the radio off.
2. Press and hold the TUNE DISP button on the radio for at least five seconds until SETTINGS is displayed.
3. Press the SEEK SCAN up or down arrow to scroll through the main menu.
4. Scroll until TIRE MON appears on the display.
5. Press the 1 PREV or 2 NEXT button to enter the submenu. RESET will be displayed.
6. Press the TUNE DISP button to reset. A chime will be heard to verify the new setting and DONE will be displayed for one second.
7. Once the monitor has been reset, scroll until EXIT appears on the display.
8. Press the TUNE DISP button to exit programming. A chime will be heard to verify exit.

The system completes the calibration process during driving.

The system normally takes 15 to 20 minutes of driving in each of three speed ranges to "learn" tire pressures. The speed ranges are 15 to 4 mph (25 to 65 km/h), 40 to 65 mph (65 to 105 km/h) and above 65 mph (105 km/h). When learning is complete, the system will alert you after two to eight minutes if a tire is 12 psi (83 kPa) different from the other three tires. Detection thresholds may be higher and detection times may be longer on rough roads, curves and at high speeds. The system is not capable of detection at speeds greater than 70 mph (110 km/h).



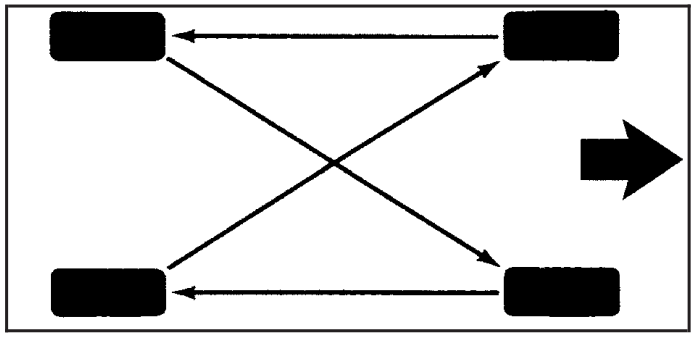
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Tire Inspection and Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km).

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-76* and *Wheel Replacement on page 5-79* for more information.

The purpose of regular rotation is to achieve more uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. The first rotation is the most important. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for scheduled rotation intervals.



When rotating your tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Don't include the compact spare tire in your tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label.

Reset the Tire Inflation Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-73*.

Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-110*.

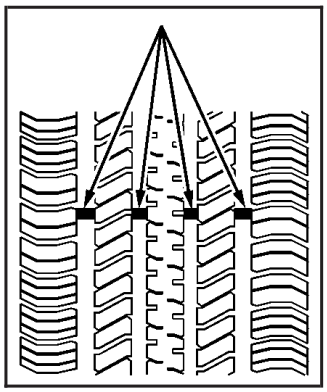
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if you need to, to get all the rust or dirt off. See "Changing a Flat Tire" in the Index.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## When It Is Time for New Tires



One way to tell when it's time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining.

You need a new tire if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut or other damage that can't be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

## Buying New Tires

To find out what kind and size of tires your vehicle needs, look at the tire and loading information label. For more information about this label and its location on your vehicle, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

The tires installed on your vehicle when it was new had a Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) number on each tire's sidewall. When you get new tires, GM recommends that you get tires with that same TPC Spec number. That way your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give proper endurance, handling, speed rating, load range, traction, ride and other things during normal service on your vehicle. If your tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC number will be followed by an "MS" (for mud and snow).

If you ever replace your tires with those not having a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating and construction type (bias, bias-belted or radial) as your original tires.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size and type tires on all wheels. It's all right to drive with your compact spare temporarily, it was developed for use on your vehicle. See "Compact Spare Tire" in the index.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.**

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

### Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by treadwear, traction and temperature performance. (This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States.) The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

Scheduled wheel alignment and wheel balancing are not needed. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

## Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for replacement.**

***Notice:*** **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-82* for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Used Replacement Wheels

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You can't know how it's been used or how far it's been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.**

## Tire Chains

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If your vehicle has P235/55R17 size tires, don't use tire chains, there's not enough clearance.**

**Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash.**

**Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust or remove the device if it's contacting your vehicle, and don't spin your wheels.**

**If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the front tires.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Notice:*** **If your vehicle has a tire size other than P235/55R17 size tires, use tire chains only where legal and only when you must. Use only SAE Class ″S″ type chains that are the proper size for your tires. Install them on the front tires and tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.**

## If a Tire Goes Flat

It's unusual for a tire to "blowout" while you're driving, especially if you maintain your tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it's much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a "blowout," here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire will create a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you'd use in a skid. In any rear blowout, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.**

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use your jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Changing a Flat Tire

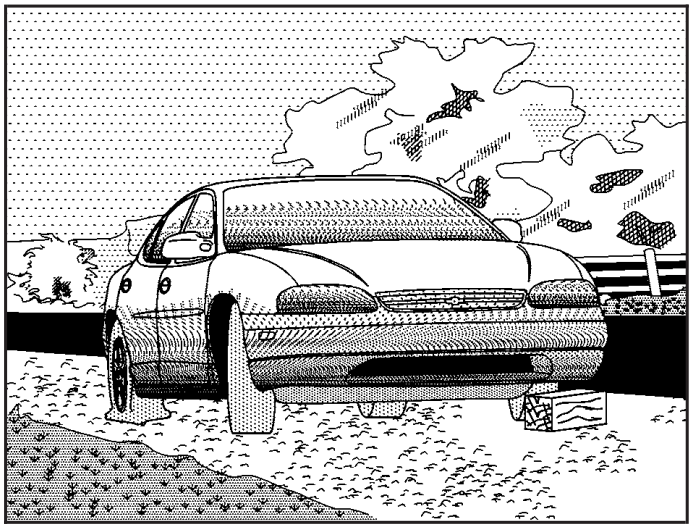
If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your hazard warning flashers.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Changing a tire can cause an injury. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over you or other people. You and they could be badly injured. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:**

1. **Set the parking brake firmly.**
2. **Put the shift lever in PARK (P).**
3. **Turn off the engine.**

**To be even more certain the vehicle won't move, you can put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire on the other side of the vehicle, at the opposite end.**



The following steps will tell you how to use the jack and change a tire.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

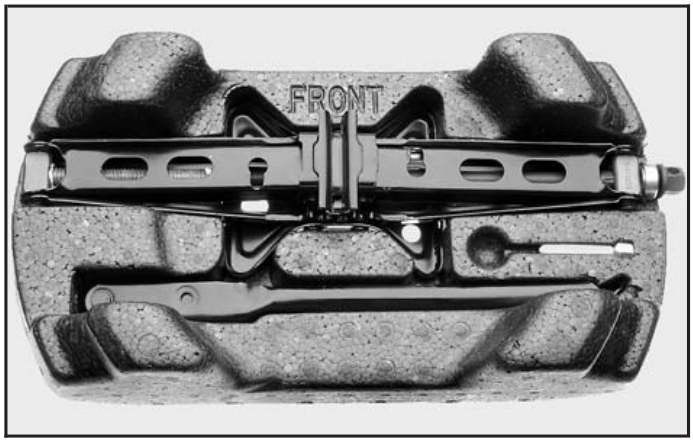
The equipment you'll need is in the trunk.

1. Turn the center nut on the compact spare tire cover counterclockwise to remove it. Then remove the cover.

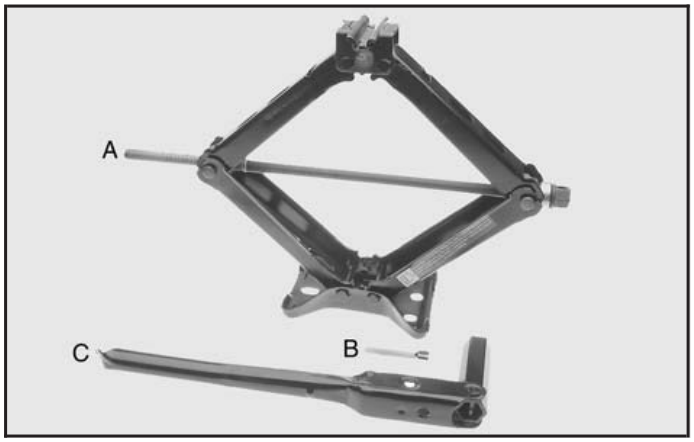
2. Remove the compact spare tire. See "Compact Spare Tire" later in this section for more information about the compact spare tire.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




3. Turn the nut holding the jack counterclockwise and remove it. Then remove the jack and wrench.




4. The tools you'll be using include the jack (A) extension and protector/guide (B) and wheel wrench (C).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

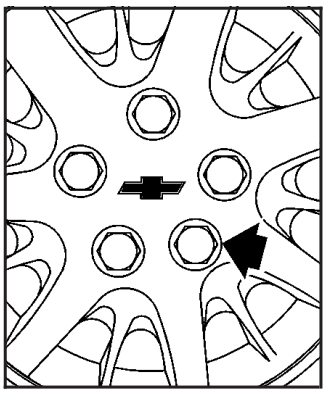
## Removing the Wheel Covers and the Wheel Nut Caps

### Removing the Center Wheel Cap

Your vehicle may have center caps if equipped with aluminum wheels.

To remove the wheel center cap use the flat end of the wheel wrench and pry them off at the pry off notch. Do not drop the cap or lay it face down, as it could become scratched or damaged. The wheel nuts are hidden behind the center cap.

### Removing the Wheel Covers



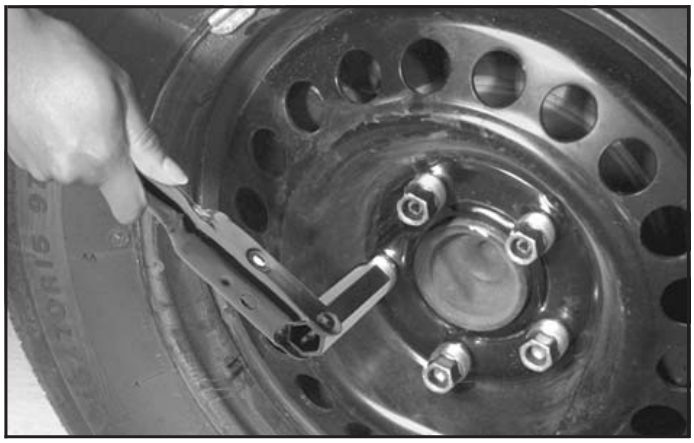
Your vehicle may be equipped with wheel covers.

To remove the steel wheel covers and wheel nut caps, loosen the plastic nut caps with the wheel wrench in a counterclockwise direction. If needed, you can finish loosening them with your fingers. The plastic nut caps will not come off. Use the flat end of the wheel wrench and pry along the edge of the cover until it comes off. The edge of the wheel cover could be sharp, so do not try to remove it with your bare hands. Do not drop the cover or lay it face down, as it could become scratched or damaged.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire



1. Using the wheel wrench, loosen all the wheel nuts. Don't remove them yet.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

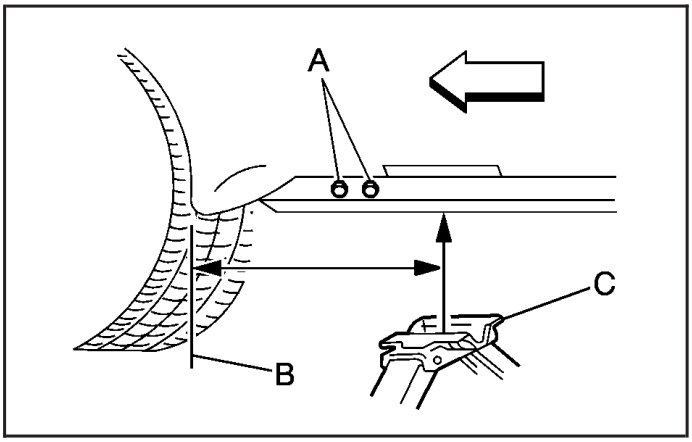
**Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.**



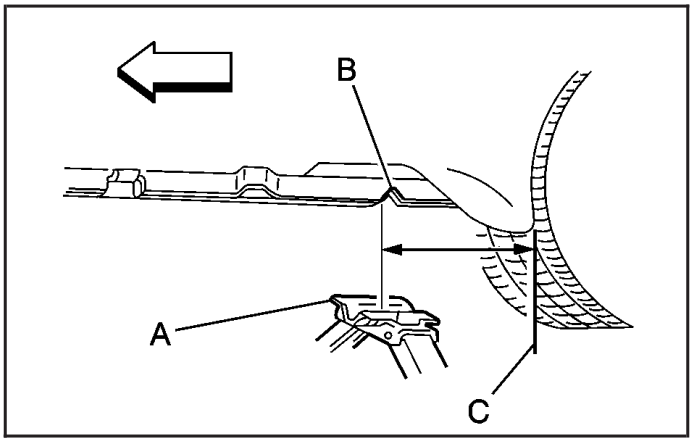
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**Jack placement for a front tire**

The diagram shows you where you should place your jack to change a front tire. Use the bolts (A) as a guide when positioning the jack lift head (C) near the rear edge of the front wheel opening (B).

For jacking at the vehicle's front location, put jack lift head about 7.5 inches (19 cm) from the rear edge of the front wheel opening in the cutout of the rocker panel molding.




**Jack placement for a rear tire**

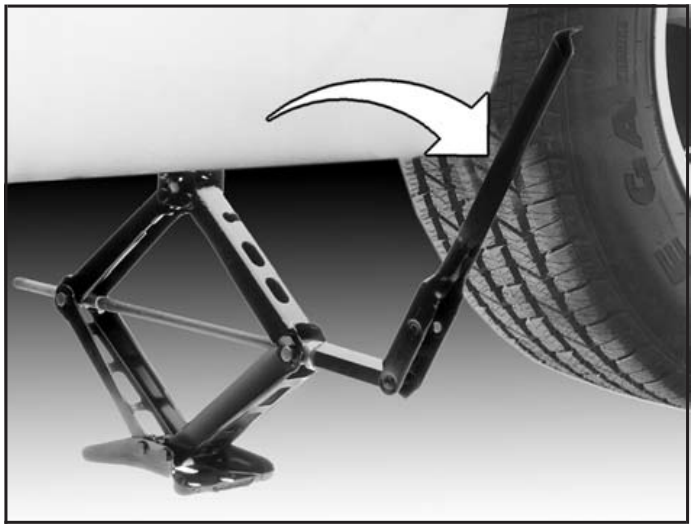
The diagram shows you where to place your jack to change a rear tire. Use the notch (B) as a guide when positioning the jack lift head (A) near the front edge of the rear wheel opening (C).

For jacking at the vehicle's rear location, put the jack lift head about 4 inches (10 cm) from the front edge of the rear wheel opening in the cutout of the rocker panel molding.

Put the compact spare tire near you.



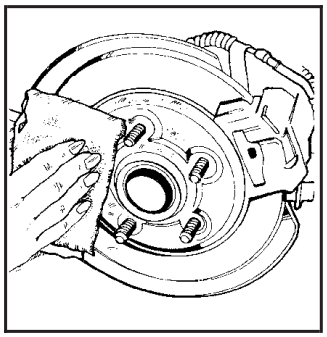
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground for the compact spare tire to fit underneath the wheel well of the vehicle. Remove all wheel nuts and take off the flat tire.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if you need to, to get all the rust or dirt off.**



3. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.



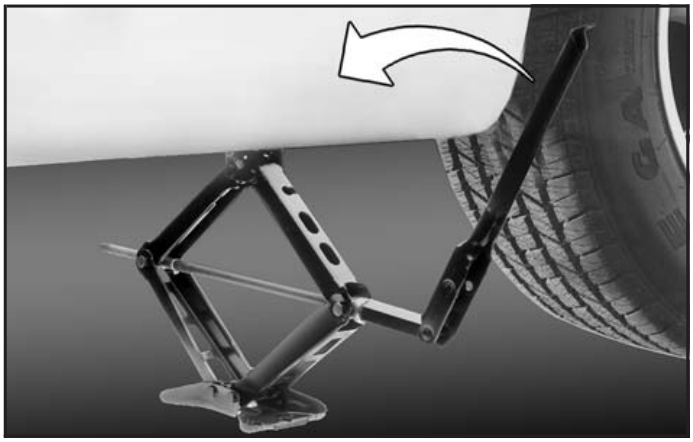
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. If you do, the nuts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.**

4. Install the compact spare tire.

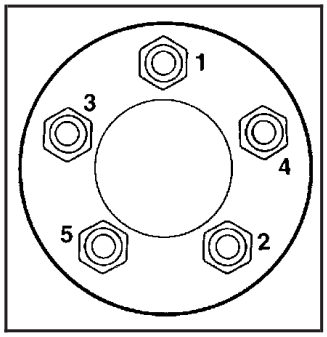
5. Reinstall the wheel nuts with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.



6. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise. Lower the jack completely.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




7. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. See "Capacities and Specifications" in the Index for wheel nut torque specification.**

***Notice:*** **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See "Capacities and Specifications" in the index for the wheel nut torque specification.**

Don't try to put the wheel cover on your compact spare tire. It won't fit. Store the wheel cover and wheel center cap, if applicable, in the trunk until you have the flat tire repaired or replaced.

***Notice:*** **Wheel covers will not fit on your compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare, you could damage the cover or the spare.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Storing the Flat Tire and Tools

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.**

After you've put the compact spare tire on your vehicle, you'll need to store the flat tire in your trunk. Use the following procedure to secure the flat tire in the trunk.

When storing a full-size tire, use the extension and protector/guide located in the foam holder to help prevent wheel surface damage.

To store a full-size tire do the following:

1. Place the tire in the trunk, valve stem facing down with the protector/guide through a wheel bolt hole.
2. Remove the protector/guide and attach the retainer securely. The cover will not fit over a full-size tire, so be sure to store the cover as far forward as possible.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Storing the Spare Tire and Tools

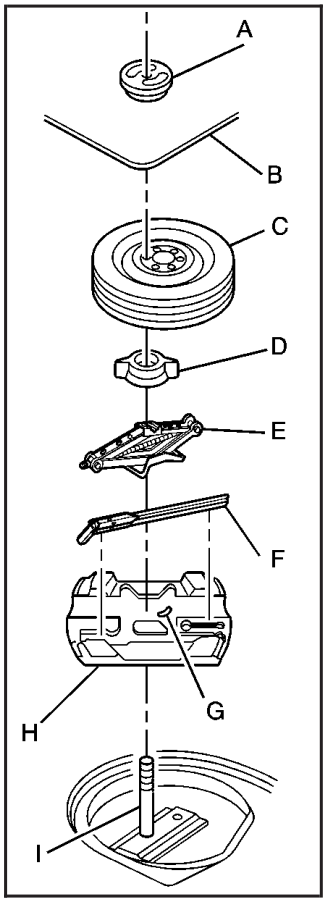
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.**

The compact spare tire is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tire with a full-size tire as soon as you can. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-93*

To properly store the compact spare tire do the following:

1. When you put the compact spare tire back in the trunk, place the protector/guide back in the foam holder.
2. Put the cover back over the compact spare tire and tighten the center nut.




A. Retainer
B. Cover
C. Compact Spare Tire
D. Nut
E. Jack
F. Wheel Wrench
G. Extension and Protective Guide
H. Foam Holder
I. Bolt Screw



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Compact Spare Tire

Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when your vehicle was new, it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

After installing the compact spare on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure your spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/h) for distances up to 3,000 miles (5 000 km), so you can finish your trip and have your full-size tire repaired or replaced where you want. You must calibrate the tire inflation monitor system after installing or removing the compact spare. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-73*. The system may not work correctly when the compact spare is installed on the vehicle. Of course, it's best to replace your spare with a full-size tire as soon as you can. Your spare will last longer and be in good shape in case you need it again.

***Notice:*** **When the compact spare is installed, don't take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails. That can damage the tire and wheel, and maybe other parts of your vehicle.**

Don't use your compact spare on other vehicles.

And don't mix your compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They won't fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together.

***Notice:*** **Tire chains won't fit your compact spare. Using them can damage your vehicle and can damage the chains too. Don't use tire chains on your compact spare.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Appearance Care

Remember, cleaning products can be hazardous. Some are toxic. Others can burst into flames if you strike a match or get them on a hot part of the vehicle. Some are dangerous if you breathe their fumes in a closed space. When you use anything from a container to clean your vehicle, be sure to follow the manufacturer's warnings and instructions. And always open your doors or windows when you are cleaning the inside.

Never use these to clean your vehicle:

- Gasoline
- Benzene
- Naphtha
- Carbon Tetrachloride
- Acetone
- Paint Thinner
- Turpentine
- Lacquer Thinner
- Nail Polish Remover

They can all be hazardous — some more than others — and they can all damage your vehicle, too.

Do not use any of these unless this manual says you can. In many uses, these will damage your vehicle:

- Alcohol
- Laundry Soap
- Bleach
- Reducing Agents

## Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle

Use a vacuum cleaner often to get rid of dust and loose dirt. Wipe vinyl, leather, plastic and painted surfaces with a clean, damp cloth.

### Cleaning Fabric/Carpet

Your dealer has cleaners for the cleaning of fabric and carpet. They will clean normal spots and stains very well.

You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-100*.

Here are some cleaning tips:

- Always read the instructions on the cleaner label.
- Clean up stains as soon as you can — before they set.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Carefully scrape off any excess stain.
- Use a clean cloth or sponge, and change to a clean area often. A soft brush may be used if stains are stubborn.
- If a ring forms on fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately or it will set.

## Using Cleaner on Fabric

1. Vacuum and brush the area to remove any loose dirt.
2. Always clean a whole trim panel or section. Mask surrounding trim along stitch or welt lines.
3. Follow the directions on the container label.
4. Apply cleaner with a clean sponge. Do not saturate the material and do not rub it roughly.
5. As soon as you have cleaned the section, use a sponge to remove any excess cleaner.
6. Wipe cleaned area with a clean, water-dampened towel or cloth.
7. Wipe with a clean cloth and let dry.

## Special Fabric Cleaning Problems

Stains caused by such things as catsup, coffee (black), egg, fruit, fruit juice, milk, soft drinks, vomit, urine and blood can be removed as follows:

1. Carefully scrape off excess stain, then sponge the soiled area with cool water.
2. If a stain remains, follow the cleaning instructions described earlier.
3. If an odor lingers after cleaning vomit or urine, treat the area with a water and baking soda solution: 1 teaspoon (5 ml) of baking soda to 1 cup (250 ml) of lukewarm water.
4. Let dry.

Stains caused by candy, ice cream, mayonnaise, chili sauce and unknown stains can be removed as follows:

1. Carefully scrape off excess stain.
2. Clean with cool water and allow to dry completely.
3. If a stain remains, follow the cleaner instructions described earlier.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cleaning Vinyl

Use warm water and a clean cloth.

- Rub with a clean, damp cloth to remove dirt. You may have to do this more than once.
- Things like tar, asphalt and shoe polish will stain if you do not get them off quickly. Use a clean cloth and vinyl cleaner. See your dealer for this product.

## Cleaning Leather

Use a soft cloth with lukewarm water and a mild soap or saddle soap and wipe dry with a soft cloth. Then, let the leather dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry.

- For stubborn stains, use a leather cleaner.
- *Never* use oils, varnishes, solvent-based or abrasive cleaners, furniture polish or shoe polish on leather.
- Soiled or stained leather should be cleaned immediately. If dirt is allowed to work into the finish, it can harm the leather.

## Cleaning the Top of the Instrument Panel

Use only mild soap and water to clean the top surfaces of the instrument panel. Sprays containing silicones or waxes may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

## Cleaning Interior Plastic Components

Use only a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth or sponge. Commercial cleaners may affect the surface finish.

## Cleaning Glass Surfaces

Glass should be cleaned often. GM Glass Cleaner or a liquid household glass cleaner will remove normal tobacco smoke and dust films on interior glass. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-100*.

***Notice:*** **If you use abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on your vehicle, you could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger and the integrated radio antenna. When cleaning the glass on your vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.**

## Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth at least every six months. During very cold, damp weather more frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

## Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle

The paint finish on your vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention and durability.

### Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve your vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often with lukewarm or cold water.

Do not wash your vehicle in the direct rays of the sun. Use a car washing soap. Do not use strong soaps or chemical detergents. Be sure to rinse the vehicle well, removing all soap residue completely. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-100*. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based, or that contain acid or abrasives. All cleaning agents should be flushed promptly and not allowed to dry on the surface, or they could stain. Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under “Washing Your Vehicle.”

## Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of your vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-100*.

Your vehicle has a “basecoat/clearcoat” paint finish. The clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

***Notice:*** **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on your vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage your vehicle’s finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. You can help to keep the paint finish looking new by keeping your vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

## Cleaning Windshield and Wiper Blades

If the windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax, sap or other material may be on the blade or windshield.

Clean the outside of the windshield with a full-strength glass cleaning liquid. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse it with water.

Grime from the windshield will stick to the wiper blades and affect their performance. Clean the blade by wiping vigorously with a cloth soaked in full-strength windshield washer solvent. Then rinse the blade with water.

Check the wiper blades and clean them as necessary; replace blades that look worn.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cleaning Aluminum Wheels

Keep your wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of your vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because you could damage the surface.
Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. These brushes can also damage the surface of these wheels.

## Cleaning Tires

To clean your tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

***Notice:*** **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on your vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on your vehicle.**

## Sheet Metal Damage

If your vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

## Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials avaliable from your dealer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

## Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on your vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, GM will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

## Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

See your GM dealer for more information on purchasing the following products.

### Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

| Description | Usage |
|---|---|
| Polishing Cloth Wax-Treated | Interior and exterior polishing cloth. |
| Tar and Road Oil Remover | Removes tar, road oi and asphalt. |
| Chrome Cleaner and Polish | Use on chrome or stainless steel. |
| White Sidewall Tire Cleaner | Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls. |
| Vinyl Cleaner | Cleans vinyl tops, upholstery and convertible tops. |
| Glass Cleaner | Removes dirt, grime, smoke and fingerprints. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials (cont'd)

| Description | Usage |
|---|---|
| Chrome and Wire Wheel Cleaner | Removes dirt and grime from chrome wheels and wire wheel covers. |
| Finish Enhancer | Removes dust, fingerprints, and surface contaminants. Spray on wipe off. |
| Swirl Remover Polish | Removes swirl marks, fine scratches and other light surface contamination. |
| Cleaner Wax | Removes light scratches and protects finish. |
| Foaming Tire Shine Low Gloss | Cleans, shines and protects in one easy step, no wiping necessary. |

## Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials (cont'd)

| Description | Usage |
|---|---|
| Wash Wax Concentrate | Medium foaming shampoo. Cleans and lightly waxes. Biodegradable and phosphate free. |
| Spot Lifter | Quickly and easily removes spots and stains from carpets, vinyl and cloth upholstery. |
| Odor Eliminator | Odorless spray odor eliminator used on fabrics, vinyl, leather and carpet. |
| See your General Motors parts department for these products. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*. | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Vehicle Identification

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver's side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

### Engine Identification

The 8th character in your VIN is the engine code. This code will help you identify your engine, specifications and replacement parts.

## Service Parts Identification Label

You'll find this label on the inside of your trunk lid. It's very helpful if you ever need to order parts. On this label is:

- your VIN,
- the model designation,
- paint information and
- a list of all production options and special equipment.

Be sure that this label is not removed from the vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Electrical System

## Add-On Electrical Equipment

***Notice:*** **Don't add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Your vehicle has an air bag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see *Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-56*.

## Headlamp Wiring

The headlamp circuit is protected by individual fuses in the underhood fuse block. An electrical overload will cause the fuse to blow. If this happens, have your headlamp system checked right away.

## Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by a circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem, have it fixed.

## Power Windows and Other Power Options

A circuit breaker in the driver's side instrument panel fuse block protects the power windows and other power accessories. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

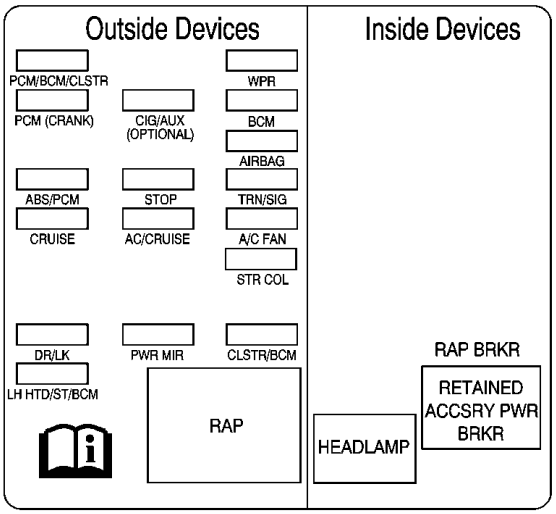
## Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

## Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Driver's Side)

Some fuses are in a fuse block at the end of the instrument panel on the driver's side of the vehicle. Pull off the cover labeled FUSES to expose the fuses.




| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| PCM/BCM/CLSTR | Powertrain Control Module, Body Control Module, Cluster (Ignition 0) |
| WSW | Windshield Wipers, Windshield Washer |
| PCM (CRANK) | Powertrain Control Module (Crank) |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| CIG/AUX | Accommodated Device (Accessory) |
| BCM | Body Control Module (Accessory) |
| SRS | Supplemental Restraint System |
| ABS/PCM | Anti-Lock Brake System, Powertrain Control Module, Brake Switch, Crank Relay, Canister Vent Solenoid (Run, Crank) |
| STOP | Brake Lamps, Body Control Module (Run, Crank) |
| TURN SIGNAL | Turn Signal Flashers |
| CRUISE | Cruise Control Steering Column Controls |
| AC/CRUISE | HVAC Temp Door Motors & Module, Cruise Control Module |
| A/C FAN | HVAC Blower |
| STR COL | Steering Wheel Lighting |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| DR LK | Body Control Module, Door Lock Controls |
| PWR MIR | Power Mirrors |
| CLSTR/BCM | Cluster, Body Control Module, Data Link Connector (Battery) |
| LH HTD ST/BCM | Driver's Heated Seat, Body Control Module, Battery controlled Loads |

| Circuit Breakers | Usage |
|---|---|
| RETAINED ACCESSORY PWR BRKR | Power Windows, Sunroof Breaker |

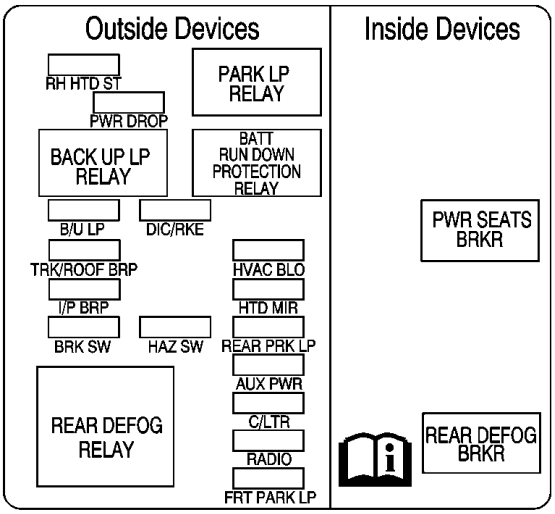
| Relays | Usage |
|---|---|
| RETAINED ACCESSORY PWR RELAY | Retained Accessory Power Relay |
| HEADLAMP RELAY | Headlamp Relay |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Passenger's Side)

Some fuses are in a fuse block at the end of the instrument panel on the passenger's side of the vehicle. Pull off the cover labeled FUSES to expose the fuses.




| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| RH HTD ST | Passenger Heated Seat |
| PWR DROP | Accommodated Device |
| B/U LP | Back-Up Lamps |
| DIC/RKE | Driver Information Center, Remote Keyless Entry, HVAC |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| TRK/ROOF BRP | Trunk Lamps, Headliner Lamps |
| HVAC BLO | HVAC Blower Relay |
| I/P BRP | Instrument Panel Footwell Lamps, Glovebox Lamps |
| HTD MIR | Heated Mirrors |
| BRK SW | Brake Switch |
| HAZ SW | Hazard Switch |
| REAR PRK LP | Rear Parking Lamps |
| AUX PWR | Accessory Power Outlet (Battery) |
| C/LTR | Cigarette Lighter |
| RADIO | Radio, Radio Amplifier, Remote Digital Radio Receiver |
| FRT PARK LP | Front Parking Lamps, Instrumentation Lighting |

| Relays | Usage |
|---|---|
| PARK LP RELAY | Parking Lamp Relay |
| BACKUP LP RELAY | Back-up Lamps Relay |
| BATT RUN DOWN PROTECTION RELAY | Battery Run Down Protection Relay |
| REAR DEFOG RELAY | Rear Defogger Relay, Heated Mirror Relay |

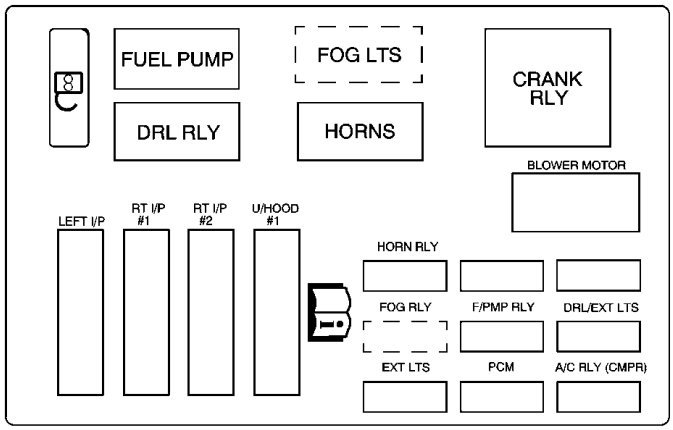
| Breakers | Usage |
|---|---|
| PWR SEATS BRKR | Power Seat Circuit Breaker |
| REAR DEFOG BRKR | Rear Defogger Breaker |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Underhood Fuse Block (Upper)

Some fuses are in a fuse block in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.




| Relays | Usage |
|---|---|
| FUEL PUMP | Fuel Pump |
| DRL RELAY | Daytime Running Lamps |
| CRANK RLY | Starter (Crank) Relay |
| HORNS | Horn |
| FOG LTS | Fog Lamps |

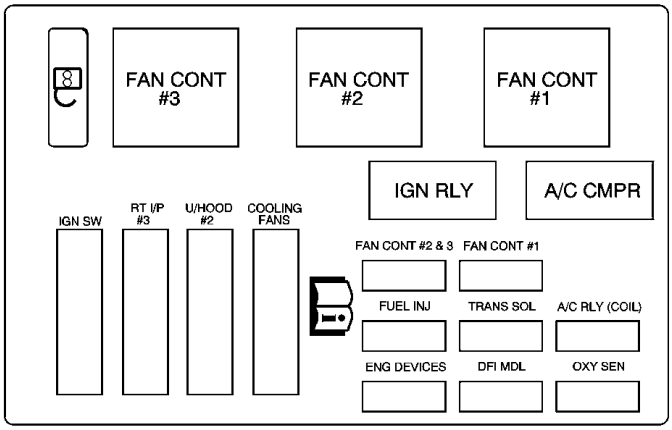
| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| LEFT I/P | Left Fuse Block |
| RT I/P #1 | Right Fuse Block (Battery) |
| RT I/P #2 | Right Fuse Block (Battery) |
| U/HOOD #1 | Underhood (Top) Fuse Block |
| HORN RLY | Horn Relay |
| BLANK | Blank |
| BLANK | Blank |
| FOG RLY | Fog Lamps Relay |
| F/PMP RLY | Fuel Pump Relay |
| DRL/EXIT LTS | Low (Left Front) & High (Left Front) Headlamps |
| EXT LTS | Low (Right Front) & High (Right Front) Headlamps |
| PCM | PCM Battery |
| A/C RLY (COMP) | HVAC Compressor Relay & Generator |
| BLOWER MOTOR | HVAC Blower Motor |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Underhood Fuse Block (Lower)

Some fuses are in a fuse block in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.




| Relays | Usage |
|---|---|
| FAN CONT #3 | Secondary Cooling Fan (Passenger's Side) |
| FAN CONT #2 | Cooling Fan Control Relay |
| FANT CONT #1 | Primary Cooling Fan (Driver's Side) |

| Relays | Usage |
|---|---|
| IGN RELAY | Ignition Relay |
| A/C CMPR | HVAC Compressor |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| IGN SW | Ignition Switch |
| RT I/P #3 | Rear Defogger, Audio System |
| U/HOOD #2 | Ignition Relay, AIR Pump |
| COOLING FANS | Cooling fans (Battery) |
| FAN CONT #2 & #3 | Relays #2 & #3 |
| FAN CON #1 | Cooling Fan Control Relays #1 |
| FUEL INJ | Fuel Injectors |
| TRANS SOL | Transmission Solenoids |
| A/C RLY (COIL) | HVAC Control Relay |
| ENG DEVICES | Canister Purge Solenoid, Mass Air Flow Sensor (MAF), AIR Pump Relay & Valve Control |
| DFI MDL | Direct Fire Ignition Module |
| OXY SEN | Oxygen Sensors (Pre and Post Converter) |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Capacities and Specifications

Please refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* for more information.

| Application | Capacities | |
|---|---|---|
| | English | Metric |
| Air Conditioning Refrigerant R-134a | 2.4 lbs | 1.1 kg |
| **Automatic Transaxle**<br>Pan Removal and Replacement<br>After Complete Overhaul<br>*When draining/replacing converter, more fluid may be needed.* | <br>7.4 quarts<br>10 quarts | <br>7.0 L<br>9.5 L |
| **Cooling System Including Reservoir**<br>3400 (Code E) V6<br>3800 (Code K) V6<br>3800 Supercharged (Code 1) V6 | <br>11.3 quarts<br>11.7 quarts<br>11.7 quarts | <br>10.7 L<br>11.0 L<br>11.0 L |
| **Engine Oil with Filter**<br>3400 (Code E) V6<br>3800 (Code K) V6<br>3800 Supercharged (Code 1) V6 | <br>4.0 quarts<br>4.5 quarts<br>4.5 quarts | <br>3.8 L<br>4.2 L<br>4.2 L |
| Fuel Tank | 17.0 gallons | 64.0 L |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

## Engine Specifications

| Engine | VIN Code | Transmission | Spark Pug Gap |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3400 (LA1) V6 | E | Automatic | 0.060 inches (1.52 mm) |
| 3800 (L36) V6 | K | Automatic | 0.060 inches (1.52 mm) |
| 3800 Supercharged (L67) V6 | 1 | Automatic | 0.060 inches (1.52 mm) |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## NOTES



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

**Maintenance Schedule** .....6-2
Introduction .....6-2
Maintenance Requirements .....6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment .....6-2
Using Your Maintenance Schedule .....6-2
Scheduled Maintenance .....6-4
Additional Required Services .....6-6
Maintenance Footnotes .....6-7
Owner Checks and Services .....6-9
At Each Fuel Fill .....6-9
At Least Once a Month .....6-9
At Least Once a Year .....6-10
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....6-12
Engine Drive Belt Routing .....6-14
Maintenance Record .....6-15



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Maintenance Schedule

## Introduction

**Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.**

*Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements your new vehicle warranties. See your Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer for details.*

## Maintenance Requirements

***Notice:*** **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep your vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance may not be covered by warranty.**

## Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep your vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from your vehicle. To help protect our environment, and to keep your vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain your vehicle properly.

## Using Your Maintenance Schedule

We at General Motors want to help you keep your vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You may drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you may drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You may use your vehicle in making deliveries. Or you may drive it to work, to do errands or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You may need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep your vehicle in good condition, see your GM Goodwrench dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. You will find these limits on the tire and loading information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-4*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 6-6* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 6-7* for further information.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your GM Goodwrench dealer to have a qualified technician do the work.**

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should have your GM Goodwrench dealer do these jobs.

When you go to your GM Goodwrench dealer for your service needs, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM parts.

If you want to get service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-13*.

*Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9* tells you what should be checked, when to check it and what you can easily do to help keep your vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* and *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*. When your vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine GM parts.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Scheduled Maintenance

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message comes on, it means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your GM Goodwrench dealer has GM-trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, you must service your vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil on page 5-18* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the change engine oil message appears, certain services, checks and inspections are required. Required services are described in the following for "Maintenance I" and "Maintenance II." Generally, it is recommended that your first service be Maintenance I, your second service be Maintenance II and that you alternate Maintenance I and Maintenance II thereafter. However, in some cases, Maintenance II may be required more often.

**Maintenance I** — Use Maintenance I if the change engine oil message comes on within ten months since vehicle was purchased or Maintenance II was performed.

**Maintenance II** — Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I. Always use Maintenance II whenever the message comes on ten months or more since the last service or if the message has not come on at all for one year.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Service | Maintenance I | Maintenance II |
|---|---|---|
| Change engine oil and filter. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 5-18*. *An Emission Control Service.* | • | • |
| Visually check for any leaks or damage. *See footnote (k).* | • | • |
| Inspect engine air cleaner filter. If necessary, replace filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-26*. *An Emission Control Service. See footnote †.* | • | • |
| Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See *Tires on page 5-65*. | • | • |
| Inspect brake system. *See footnote (a).* | • | • |
| Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed. | • | • |
| Perform any needed additional services. See “Additional Required Services” in this section. | • | • |
| Inspect suspension and steering components. *See footnote (b).* | | • |
| Inspect engine cooling system. *See footnote (c).* | | • |
| Inspect wiper blades. *See footnote (d).* | | • |
| Inspect restraint system components. *See footnote (e).* | | • |
| Lubricate body components. *See footnote (f).* | | • |
| Check transaxle fluid level and add fluid as needed. | | • |
| Replace passenger compartment air filter (if equipped). *See footnote (g).* | | • |
| Inspect throttle system. *See footnote (j).* | | • |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service (I or II) after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

| Service | 25,000 (41 500) | 50,000 (83 000) | 75,000 (125 000) | 100,000 (166 000) | 125,000 (207 500) | 150,000 (240 000) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks. | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components. | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| Replace engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-26*. *An Emission Control Service.* | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| Supercharger service (if equipped). *An Emission Control Service. See footnotes † and (l).* | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| Change automatic transaxle fluid and filter (severe service). *See footnote (h).* | | • | | • | | • |
| Change automatic transaxle fluid and filter (normal service). | | | | • | | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Service | 25,000 (41 500) | 50,000 (83 000) | 75,000 (125 000) | 100,000 (166 000) | 125,000 (207 500) | 150,000 (240 000) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires. *An Emission Control Service.* | | | | • | | |
| Engine cooling system service (or every 5 years, whichever occurs first). *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).* | | | | | | • |
| Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service.* | | | | | | • |

## Maintenance Footnotes

† *The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings and clamps; replace with genuine GM parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(d) *Visually inspect wiper blades for wear or cracking. Replace blade inserts that appear worn or damaged or that streak or miss areas of the windshield.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also look for any opened or broken air bag coverings, and have them repaired or replaced. (The air bag system does not need regular maintenance.)*

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders. Lubricate all hinges and latches, including those for the body doors, hood, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, rear compartment, glove box door, console door and any folding seat hardware. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, the filter may require replacement more often.*

(h) *Change automatic transaxle fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush and refill cooling system. See Engine Coolant on page 5-31* for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.

(j) *Check throttle system for interference or binding and for damaged or missing parts. Replace parts as needed. Replace any components that have high effort or excessive wear. Do not lubricate accelerator or cruise control cables.*

(k) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(l) *For supercharged engines onl: Check the supercharger oil level and add the proper supercharger oil as needed (or every 36 months, whichever occurs first). See Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure the safety, dependability and emission control performance of your vehicle. Your GM Goodwrench dealer can assist you with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to your vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

## At Each Fuel Fill

*It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.*

### Engine Oil Level Check

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 5-18* for further details.

***Notice:*** **It is important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep your engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to your engine not covered by your warranty.**

### Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-31* for further details.

### Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer tank and add the proper fluid if necessary.

## At Least Once a Month

### Tire Inflation Check

Visually inspect your tires and make sure tires are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check your spare tire. See *Tires on page 5-65* for further details.

### Cassette Tape Player Service

Clean cassette tape player. Cleaning should be done every 50 hours of tape play. See *Audio System(s) on page 3-54* for further details.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## At Least Once a Year

### Starter Switch Check

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.**

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-25* if necessary.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The starter should work only in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). If the starter works in any other position, contact your GM Goodwrench dealer for service.

### Automatic Transaxle Shift Lock Control System Check

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.**

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-25* if necessary.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the key to the ON position, but don't start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of PARK (P) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of PARK (P), contact your GM Goodwrench dealer for service.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Ignition Transaxle Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition key to OFF in each shift lever position.

- The key should turn to OFF only when the shift lever is in PARK (P).
- The key should come out only in OFF.

Contact your GM Goodwrench dealer if service is required.

## Parking Brake and Automatic Transaxle Park (P) Mechanism Check

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When you are doing this check, your vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of your vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.**

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and transaxle in NEUTRAL (N), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the PARK (P) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to PARK (P). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your GM Goodwrench dealer if service is required.

## Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number or specification may be obtained from your dealer.

| Usage | Fluid/Lubricant |
|---|---|
| Engine Oil | Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see *Engine Oil on page 5-18*. |
| Engine Coolant | 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-31*. |
| Hydraulic Brake System | Delco Supreme 11 Brake Fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid. |
| Windshield Washer Solvent | GM Optikleen® Washer Solvent. |
| Power Steering System | GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186). |

| Usage | Fluid/Lubricant |
|---|---|
| Automatic Transaxle | DEXRON®-III Automatic Transmission Fluid. |
| Key Lock Cylinders | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474). |
| Supercharger | Supercharger Oil (GM Part No. U.S. 12345982, in Canada 10953513). See *Supercharger Oil on page 5-24*. |
| Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor and Release Pawl | Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB. |
| Hood and Door Hinges | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474). |
| Weatherstrip Conditioning | Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887). |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

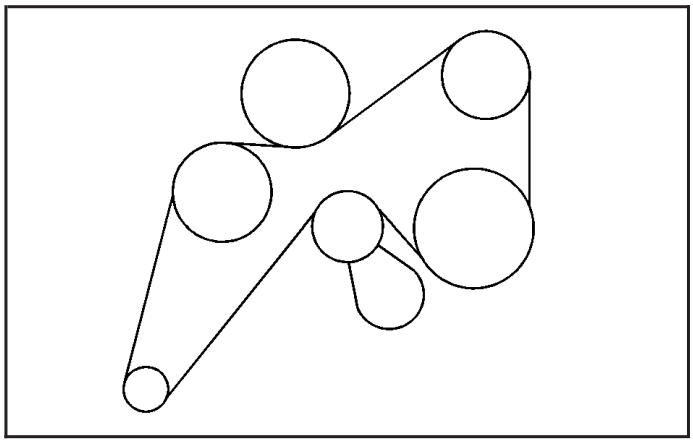
## Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

| Part | GM Part Number | AC Delco Part Number |
|---|---|---|
| Engine Air Cleaner/Filter | 24508572 | A1614C |
| Passenger Compartment Air Filter | 10406026 | — |
| Engine Oil Filter | 25010792 | PF47 |
| Automatic Transmission Filter | 24206433 | — |
| Spark Plugs | 12568387 | 41–101 |
| Windshield Wiper Blades | 12367280 | 8–2221 |
| Type | Shepherd's Hook | |
| Length | 22 inches (56.0 cm) | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Engine Drive Belt Routing





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 6-2* in this section. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9* can be added on the following record pages. Also, you should retain all maintenance receipts.

**Maintenance Record**

| Date | Odometer Reading | Serviced By | Maintenance I or Maintenance II | Services Performed |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Maintenance Record (cont'd)

| Date | Odometer Reading | Serviced By | Maintenance I or Maintenance II | Services Performed |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Maintenance Record (cont'd)

| Date | Odometer Reading | Serviced By | Maintenance I or Maintenance II | Services Performed |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## NOTES



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Section 7 Customer Assistance and Information

**Customer Assistance and Information** .....7-2
Customer Satisfaction Procedure .....7-2
Online Owner Center .....7-4
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users .....7-4
Customer Assistance Offices .....7-4
GM Mobility Program for Persons with Disabilities .....7-6
Roadside Assistance Program .....7-6
Courtesy Transportation .....7-8
Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Records .....7-10
**Reporting Safety Defects** .....7-12
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government .....7-12
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government .....7-12
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors .....7-12
Service Publications Ordering Information .....7-13



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Customer Assistance and Information

## Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Chevrolet. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of your vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

**STEP ONE:** Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

**STEP TWO:** If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, contact the Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center by calling 1-800-222-1020. In Canada, contact GM of Canada Customer Communication Centre in Oshawa by calling 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.)
- Dealership name and location
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage

When contacting Chevrolet, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first if you have a concern.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**STEP THREE:** Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you should file with the BBB Auto Line Program to enforce any additional rights you may have. Canadian owners refer to your Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet for information on the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1804

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Online Owner Center

The Owner Center is a resource for your GM ownership needs. You can find your specific vehicle information all in one place.

**The Owner Center allows you to:**

- Get e-mail service reminders.
- Access information about your specific vehicle, including tips and videos and an electronic version of this owner's manual. (United States only)
- Keep track of your vehicle's service history and maintenance schedule.
- Find GM dealers for service nationwide.
- Receive special promotions and privileges only available to members. (United States only)

Refer to the web for updated information.

To register your vehicle, visit www.MyGMLink.com. (United States) or My GM Canada within www.gmcanada.com (Canada).

## Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Chevrolet has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Chevrolet by dialing: 1-800-833-CHEV (2438). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

## Customer Assistance Offices

Chevrolet encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. If a U.S. customer wishes to write to Chevrolet, the letter should be addressed to Chevrolet's Customer Assistance Center.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## United States – Customer Assistance

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

1-800-222-1020
1-800-833-2438 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-CHEV-USA® (243-8872)
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From Puerto Rico:
1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From U.S. Virgin Islands:
1-800-496-9994
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

## Canada – Customer Assistance

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-268-6800

## Overseas – Customer Assistance

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

## Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) – Customer Assistance

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740
Col. Lomas de Bezares
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.
01-800-508-0000
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## GM Mobility Program for Persons with Disabilities

This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 toward eligible aftermarket driver or passenger adaptive equipment you may require for your vehicle (hand controls, wheelchair/scooter lifts, etc.).

This program can also provide you with free resource information, such as area driver assessment centers and mobility equipment installers. The offer is available for a limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, see your GM dealer or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

GM of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. All TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

## Roadside Assistance Program

To enhance Chevrolet's strong commitment to customer satisfaction, Chevrolet is excited to announce the establishment of the Chevrolet Roadside Assistance Center. As the owner of a 2004 Chevrolet, membership in Roadside Assistance is free.

Roadside Assistance is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year, by calling 1-800-CHEV-USA (243-8872). This toll-free number will provide you over-the-phone roadside assistance with minor mechanical problems. If your problem cannot be resolved over the phone, our advisors have access to a nationwide network of dealer recommended service providers. Roadside membership is free; however some services may incur costs.

Roadside offers two levels of service to the customer, *Basic Care* and *Courtesy Care:*

Roadside *Basic Care* provides:

- Toll-free number, 1-800-CHEV-USA (243-8872), text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-888-889-2438
- Free towing for warranty repairs
- Basic over-the-phone technical advice
- Available dealer services at reasonable costs (i.e., wrecker services, locksmith/key service, glass repair, etc.)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roadside *Courtesy Care* provides:

- Roadside *Basic Care* services (as outlined previously)

  Plus:

- FREE Non-Warranty Towing (to the closest dealer from a legal roadway)
- FREE Locksmith/Key Service (when keys are lost on the road or locked inside)
- FREE Flat Tire Service (spare installed on the road)
- FREE Jump Start (at home or on the road)
- FREE Fuel Delivery ($5 of fuel delivered on the road)

Chevrolet offers Courtesy Transportation for customers needing warranty service. Courtesy Transportation will be offered in conjunction with the coverage provided by the Bumper-to-Bumper New Vehicle Limited Warranty to eligible purchasers of 2004 Chevrolet passenger cars and light duty trucks. (See your selling dealer for details.)

*Courtesy Care* is available to retail and retail lease customers operating 2004 and newer Chevrolet vehicles for a period of 3 years/36,000 miles (60 000 km), whichever occurs first. All *Courtesy Care* services must be pre-arranged by Chevrolet Roadside or dealer service management.

*Basic Care* and*Courtesy Care* are not part of or included in the coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Chevrolet reserves the right to modify or discontinue *Basic Care* and *Courtesy Care* at any time.

The Roadside Assistance Center uses companies that will provide you with quality and priority service. When roadside services are required, our advisors will explain any payment obligations that may be incurred for utilizing outside services.

For prompt assistance when calling, please have the following available to give to the advisor;

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- License plate number
- Vehicle color
- Vehicle location
- Telephone number where you can be reached
- Vehicle mileage
- Description of problem



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Canadian Roadside Assistance

Vehicles purchased in Canada have an extensive Roadside Assistance program accessible from anywhere in Canada or the United States. Please refer to the Warranty and Owner Assistance Information book.

# Courtesy Transportation

Chevrolet has always exemplified quality and value in its offering of motor vehicles. To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for new vehicles.

The Courtesy Transportation program is offered to retail purchase/lease customers in conjunction with the Bumper-to-Bumper coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Several transportation options are available when warranty repairs are required. This will reduce your inconvenience during warranty repairs.

## Plan Ahead When Possible

When your vehicle requires warranty service, you should contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same day repair.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait Chevrolet helps minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

### Shuttle Service

Participating dealers can provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes a one way or round trip shuttle service to a destination up to 10 miles from the dealership.

### Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, reimbursement (five day maximum) may be available for the use of public transportation such as taxi or bus. In addition, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses (five day maximum) may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts.

## Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle you obtained if your vehicle is kept for a warranty repair. Reimbursement will be limited to a maximum of $30.00 a day and must be supported by receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state, local and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

Generally it is not possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Additional Program Information

Courtesy Transportation is available during the Bumper-to-Bumper warranty coverage period, but it *is not* part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Courtesy Transportation is available only at participating dealers and all program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact you dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

**Canadian Vehicles:** For warranty repairs during the Complete Vehicle Coverage period of the General Motors of Canada New Vehicle Limited Warranty, alternative transportation may be available under the Courtesy Transportation Program. Please consult your dealer for details.

*General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.*

## Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Records

Your vehicle, like other modern motor vehicles, has a number of sophisticated computer systems that monitor and control several aspects of the vehicle’s performance. Your vehicle uses on-board vehicle computers to monitor emission control components to optimize fuel economy, to monitor conditions for airbag deployment and, if so equipped, to provide anti-lock braking and to help the driver control the vehicle in difficult driving situations. Some information may be stored during regular operations to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions; other information is stored only in a crash or near crash event by computer systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

In a crash or near crash event, computer systems, such as the Airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) in your vehicle may record information about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated, such as engine speed, brake applications, throttle position, vehicle speed, seat belt usage, airbag readiness, airbag performance data, and the severity of a collision. This information has been used to improve vehicle crash performance and may be used to improve crash performance of future vehicles and driving safety. Unlike the data recorders on many airplanes, these on-board systems do not record sounds, such as conversation of vehicle occupants.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To read this information, special equipment is needed and access to the vehicle or the SDM is required. GM will not access information about a crash event or share it with others other than

- with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee,
- in response to an official request of police or similar government office,
- as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process, or
- as required by law.

In addition, once GM collects or receives data, GM may

- use the data for GM research needs,
- make it available for research where appropriate confidentiality is to be maintained and need is shown, or
- share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with non-GM organizations for research purposes.

Others, such as law enforcement, may have access to the special equipment that can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or SDM.

If your vehicle is equipped with OnStar, please check the OnStar subscription service agreement or manual for information on its operations and data collection.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Reporting Safety Defects

## Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in the Washington, D.C. area) or write to:

NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the hotline.

## Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should immediately notify Transport Canada, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. You may write to:

Transport Canada
330 Sparks Street
Tower C
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N5

## Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, we certainly hope you'll notify us. Please call us at 1-800-222-1020, or write:

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

In Canada, please call us at 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French). Or, write:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Service Publications Ordering Information

### Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $120.00

### Transmission, Transaxle, Transfer Case Unit Repair Manual

This manual provides information on unit repair service procedures, adjustments, and specifications for GM transmissions, transaxles, and transfer cases.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $50.00

## Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

In Canada, information pertaining to Product Service Bulletins can be obtained by contacting your General Motors dealer or by calling 1-800-GM-DRIVE (1-800-463-7483).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Owner's Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner's manual will include the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner's Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00

Without Portfolio: Owner's Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00

## Current and Past Model Order Forms

Service Publications are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, please specify year and model name of the vehicle.

**ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123**
**Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM**
**Eastern Time**

For Credit Card Orders Only
(VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. on the World Wide Web at: www.helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P. O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# A


Accessory Power Outlets ..... 3-19
Adding Washer Fluid ..... 5-48
Additional Program Information ..... 7-10
Additives, Fuel ..... 5-6
Add-On Electrical Equipment ..... 5-103
Adjusting the Speakers
(Balance/Fade) ..... 3-59, 3-70, 3-81
Air Bag
Readiness Light ..... 3-34
Air Bag Systems ..... 1-48
How Does an Air Bag Restrain? ..... 1-54
Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle ..... 1-56
What Makes an Air Bag Inflate? ..... 1-54
What Will You See After an Air Bag Inflates? ..... 1-55
When Should an Air Bag Inflate? ..... 1-53
Where Are the Air Bags? ..... 1-51
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine ..... 5-26
Airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) .... 7-10
ALARM (Content Theft Operation) ..... 2-47
AM ..... 3-93
Antenna, Backglass ..... 3-95
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ..... 3-96
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 4-7
Anti-Lock Brake, System Warning Light ..... 3-37
Appearance Care ..... 5-94
Care of Safety Belts ..... 5-97
Chemical Paint Spotting ..... 5-100
Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-94
Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-97
Finish Damage ..... 5-99
Sheet Metal Damage ..... 5-99
Underbody Maintenance ..... 5-100
Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials ..... 5-100
Weatherstrips ..... 5-97
Arming with the Power Lock Switch ..... 2-15
Arming with the Remote Keyless Entry
Transmitter ..... 2-16
Ashtrays ..... 3-20
Audio System(s) ..... 3-55
Audio Steering Wheel Controls ..... 3-92
Backglass Antenna ..... 3-95
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player ..... 3-93
Care of Your CD Player ..... 3-95
Care of Your CDs ..... 3-94
Chime Level Adjustment ..... 3-96
Radio with Cassette ..... 3-56
Radio with Cassette and CD ..... 3-78
Radio with CD ..... 3-67
Setting the Time ..... 3-55
Theft-Deterrent Feature ..... 3-91




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System(s) (cont.)
Understanding Radio Reception ..... 3-93
Vehicle Customization Settings ..... 3-96
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ..... 3-96
AUTOLOCK (Automatic Door
Lock and Unlock) ..... 2-44
Automatic Transaxle
Fluid ..... 5-28
Operation ..... 2-21

## B

Backglass Antenna ..... 3-95
Backing Up ..... 4-42
Battery ..... 5-53
Battery Replacement ..... 2-7
Battery Rundown Protection ..... 3-19
Battery Warning Message ..... 3-45
Before Leaving on a Long Trip ..... 4-23
Brake
Low Fluid Warning Message ..... 3-50
Parking ..... 2-25
System Warning Light ..... 3-35
Brake Fluid ..... 5-50
Brake Wear ..... 5-52
Brakes ..... 5-50
Braking ..... 4-6
Braking in Emergencies ..... 4-9
Break-In, New Vehicle ..... 2-17
Bulb Replacement ..... 5-60
Back-Up Lamps ..... 5-63
Halogen Bulbs ..... 5-60
Headlamp Aiming ..... 5-60
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker,
and Parking Lamps ..... 5-60
Replacement Bulbs ..... 5-63
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and
Sidemarker Lamps ..... 5-62
Buying New Tires ..... 5-76

## C

California Fuel ..... 5-5
Canada – Customer Assistance ..... 7-5
Canadian Owners ..... ii
Canadian Roadside Assistance ..... 7-8
Capacities and Specifications ..... 5-110
Carbon Monoxide ..... 4-26, 4-38, 2-10, 2-29
Care of
Safety Belts ..... 5-97
Your Cassette Tape Player ..... 3-93
Your CD Player ..... 3-95
Your CDs ..... 3-94
Cassette Tape Messages ..... 3-66, 3-88
Cassette Tape Player Service ..... 6-9
CD Adapter Kits ..... 3-66, 3-88
CD Messages ..... 3-77, 3-91
Center Console Storage Area ..... 2-40



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Chains, Tires ..... 5-80
Change Engine Oil Message ..... 3-47
Check
  Engine Light ..... 3-39
Check Engine Light ..... 3-39
Checking Coolant ..... 5-33
Checking Engine Oil ..... 5-18
Checking Things Under the Hood ..... 5-10
Checking Your Restraint Systems ..... 1-57
Chemical Paint Spotting ..... 5-100
Child Restraints
  Child Restraint Systems ..... 1-35
  Infants and Young Children ..... 1-31
  Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for
    Children (LATCH System) ..... 1-40
  Older Children ..... 1-29
  Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the
    LATCH System ..... 1-42
  Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat
    Position ..... 1-43
  Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front
    Seat Position ..... 1-45
  Top Strap ..... 1-38
  Top Strap Anchor Location ..... 1-40
  Where to Put the Restraint ..... 1-38
Chime Level Adjustment ..... 3-96
CHIRP (Horn Chirp Timer) ..... 2-48
Cigarette Lighter ..... 3-20
Cleaning
  Inside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-94
  Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-97
  Underbody Maintenance ..... 5-100
  Weatherstrips ..... 5-97
Cleaning Aluminum Wheels ..... 5-99
Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses ..... 5-98
Cleaning Fabric/Carpet ..... 5-94
Cleaning Glass Surfaces ..... 5-96
Cleaning Interior Plastic Components ..... 5-96
Cleaning Leather ..... 5-96
Cleaning the Top of the Instrument Panel ..... 5-96
Cleaning Tires ..... 5-99
Cleaning Vinyl ..... 5-96
Cleaning Windshield and Wiper Blades ..... 5-98
Climate Control System
  Air Filter, Passenger Compartment ..... 3-27
  Dual ..... 3-21
Compact Spare Tire ..... 5-93
Compass Variance ..... 3-53
Content Theft-Deferrent ..... 2-15
Control of a Vehicle ..... 4-6
Convenience Net ..... 2-40
Coolant
  Engine Temperature Gage ..... 3-38
  Heater, Engine ..... 2-20
  Hot Temperature Warning Message ..... 3-45
Cooling ..... 3-23



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cooling System ..... 5-37
Courtesy Lamps ..... 3-16
Cruise Control ..... 3-11
Cruise Control Light ..... 3-42
Current and Past Model Order Forms ..... 7-14
Customer Assistance Information
  Courtesy Transportation ..... 7-8
  Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users ..... 7-4
  Customer Assistance Offices ..... 7-4
  Customer Satisfaction Procedure ..... 7-2
  GM Mobility Program for Persons with Disabilities ..... 7-6
  Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors .... 7-12
  Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government ..... 7-12
  Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government ..... 7-12
  Roadside Assistance Program ..... 7-6
  Service Publications Ordering Information ..... 7-13

# D

Daytime Running Lamps / Automatic Headlamp System ..... 3-15
Defensive Driving ..... 4-2
Defogging and Defrosting ..... 3-24
Delayed Entry Lighting ..... 3-17
Delayed Exit Lighting ..... 3-18
Delayed Headlamps ..... 3-15
Dinghy Towing ..... 4-32
Disarming with the Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter ..... 2-16
Disarming with Your Key ..... 2-16
Doing Your Own Service Work ..... 5-3
Dolly Towing ..... 4-32
Dome Lamp ..... 3-18
Door
  Ajar Warning Message ..... 3-48
  Locks ..... 2-8
  Power Door Locks ..... 2-9
  Programmable Automatic Door Locks ..... 2-9
Driver
  Position, Safety Belt ..... 1-16
Driver Information Center (DIC) ..... 3-52
Driving
  At Night ..... 4-17
  City ..... 4-21
  Defensive ..... 4-2
  Drunken ..... 4-2
  Freeway ..... 4-22
  Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 4-24
  In Rain and on Wet Roads ..... 4-18
  Winter ..... 4-26
Driving On Grades ..... 4-43
Driving on Snow or Ice ..... 4-27



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Through Deep Standing Water ..... 4-20
Driving Through Flowing Water ..... 4-20
Driving with a Trailer ..... 4-42
Dual Climate Control System ..... 3-21

# E

Easy Entry Seat ..... 1-7
Electrical System
  Add-On Equipment ..... 5-103
  Fuses and Circuit Breakers ..... 5-104
  Headlamp Wiring ..... 5-103
  Power Windows and Other Power Options .... 5-103
  Windshield Wiper Fuses ..... 5-103
Emergency Trunk Release Handle ..... 2-12
Emissions Inspection and
  Maintenance Programs ..... 3-41
Engine
  Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 5-26
  Battery ..... 5-53
  Change Oil Message ..... 3-47
  Check and Service Engine Soon Light ..... 3-39
  Coolant ..... 5-31
  Coolant Heater ..... 2-20
  Coolant Temperature Gage ..... 3-38
  Drive Belt Routing ..... 6-14
  Engine Compartment Overview ..... 5-12
Engine (cont.)
  Exhaust ..... 2-29
  Low Oil Level Message ..... 3-46
  Oil ..... 5-18
  Overheating ..... 5-34
  Starting ..... 2-18
  Supercharger Oil ..... 5-24
Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing ..... 4-45
Engine Oil Additives ..... 5-22
Entry Lighting ..... 3-17
Erasing HomeLink® Buttons ..... 2-39
Event Data Records (EDR) ..... 7-10
EXIT (Exit Feature
  Customization Mode) ..... 2-50
Express-Down Window ..... 2-14
Extender, Safety Belt ..... 1-28
Exterior Lamps ..... 3-14

# F

Filter
  Engine Air Cleaner ..... 5-26
Finding a Program Type (PTY)
  Station (RDS and XM™) ..... 3-60, 3-71, 3-82
Finding a Station ..... 3-58, 3-69, 3-80
Finish Care ..... 5-98
Finish Damage ..... 5-99



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Flash-to-Pass Feature ..... 3-9
Flat Tire ..... 5-81
Flat Tire, Changing ..... 5-82
Fluid
  Automatic Transaxle ..... 5-28
  Power Steering ..... 5-47
  Windshield Washer ..... 5-48
FM Stereo ..... 3-93
FOB PROG (Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter
  Programming) ..... 2-50
FOB HORN
  (Remote Audible Verification) ..... 2-46
FOB LIGHT (Remote Visual Verification) ..... 2-45
Fog Lamps ..... 3-16
Folding Rear Seat ..... 1-8
Following Distance ..... 4-42
Fuel ..... 5-4
  Additives ..... 5-6
  California Fuel ..... 5-5
  Filling a Portable Fuel Container ..... 5-9
  Filling Your Tank ..... 5-7
  Fuels in Foreign Countries ..... 5-6
  Gage ..... 3-43
  Gasoline Octane ..... 5-4
Fuel (cont.)
  Gasoline Specifications ..... 5-5
  Low Warning Message ..... 3-50
Fuses
  Fuses and Circuit Breakers ..... 5-104
  Windshield Wiper ..... 5-103

# G

Gage
  Engine Coolant Temperature ..... 3-38
  Fuel ..... 3-43
  Speedometer ..... 3-32
  Tachometer ..... 3-33
  Voltmeter Gage ..... 3-35
Garage Door Opener ..... 2-36
Gasoline
  Octane ..... 5-4
  Specifications ..... 5-5
Gate Operator and Canadian Programming ..... 2-38
Glove Box ..... 2-40
GM Mobility Program for Persons with
  Disabilities ..... 7-6



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## H


Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 3-6
Head Restraints ..... 1-6
Headlamp
  Aiming ..... 5-60
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer ..... 3-8
Headlamp Wiring ..... 5-103
Headlamps
  Bulb Replacement ..... 5-60
  Halogen Bulbs ..... 5-60
  Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker,
    and Parking Lamps ..... 5-60
Heated Outside Mirrors ..... 2-33
Heated Seats ..... 1-4
Heating ..... 3-23
Highbeam Out Warning Message ..... 3-51
Highway Hypnosis ..... 4-24
Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 4-24
Hitches ..... 4-41
HomeLink® Transmitter ..... 2-36
HomeLink® Transmitter, Programming ..... 2-36
Hood
  Checking Things Under ..... 5-10
  Release ..... 5-10
Horn ..... 3-7
Hot Coolant Temperature Warning Message ..... 3-45
How to Add Coolant to the Coolant
  Recovery Tank ..... 5-39
How to Add Coolant to the Radiator ..... 5-42
How to Add Fluid ..... 5-30
How to Check ..... 5-28, 5-73
How to Check and Add Oil ..... 5-25
How to Check Power Steering Fluid ..... 5-48
How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 5-26
How to Use This Manual ..... ii
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly ..... 1-15
Hydroplaning ..... 4-20


## I


If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine ..... 5-36
If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine ..... 5-35
If the Light Is Flashing ..... 3-40
If the Light Is on Steady ..... 3-40
If You Are Caught in a Blizzard ..... 4-28
If You Are Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow ..... 4-30
If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer ..... 4-39
Ignition Positions ..... 2-17
Illumination on Remote Activation ..... 2-6
Infants and Young Children, Restraints ..... 1-31
Inflation - Tire Pressure ..... 5-72
Instrument Panel
  Cluster ..... 3-29
  Overview ..... 3-4
Instrument Panel Brightness ..... 3-16




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Fuse Block
(Passenger's Side) ..... 5-106
Instrument Panel Fuse Block
(Driver's Side) ..... 5-104
Interior Lamps ..... 3-16

## J

Jump Starting ..... 5-54

## K

Keyless Entry System ..... 2-3
Keys ..... 2-2

## L

Lamps
Exterior ..... 3-14
Interior ..... 3-16
Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 1-16, 1-24
LATCH System
Child Restraints ..... 1-40
Securing a Child Restraint Designed for
the LATCH System ..... 1-42
Latches, Seatback ..... 1-6
Leaving Your Vehicle ..... 2-10
Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running ... 2-27
Light
Air Bag Readiness ..... 3-34
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning ..... 3-37
Brake System Warning ..... 3-35
Cruise Control ..... 3-42
Malfunction Indicator ..... 3-39
Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 3-41
Safety Belt Reminder ..... 3-33
TCS Warning Light ..... 3-37
Traction Control System (TCS) Warning ..... 3-37
Loading Your Vehicle ..... 4-33
Lockout Protection ..... 2-10
Locks
Door ..... 2-8
Leaving Your Vehicle ..... 2-10
Lockout Protection ..... 2-10
Power Door ..... 2-9
Programmable Automatic Door Locks ..... 2-9
Loss of Control ..... 4-16
Low Brake Fluid Warning Message ..... 3-50
Low Engine Oil Level Message ..... 3-46
Low Fuel Warning Message ..... 3-50
Low Oil Pressure Message ..... 3-46
Low Tire Message ..... 3-47
Low Washer Fluid Warning Message ..... 3-49
LT DELAY (Delayed Headlamp Illumination) ..... 2-44
Lumbar
Manual Controls ..... 1-3



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# M


Maintenance Schedule
- Additional Required Services ..... 6-6
- At Each Fuel Fill ..... 6-9
- At Least Once a Month ..... 6-9
- At Least Once a Year ..... 6-10
- Introduction ..... 6-2
- Maintenance Footnotes ..... 6-7
- Maintenance Record ..... 6-15
- Maintenance Requirements ..... 6-2
- Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts ..... 6-13
- Owner Checks and Services ..... 6-9
- Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 6-12
- Scheduled Maintenance ..... 6-4
- Using Your ..... 6-2
- Your Vehicle and the Environment ..... 6-2

Maintenance When Trailer Towing ..... 4-45
Making Turns ..... 4-43
Malfunction Indicator Light ..... 3-39
Manual Lumbar Controls ..... 1-3
Manual Operation ..... 3-21
Manual Seats ..... 1-2
Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle ..... 2-6
Message
- Battery Warning ..... 3-45
- Center ..... 3-44
- Change Engine Oil ..... 3-47

Message (cont.)
- Door Ajar Warning ..... 3-48
- Highbeam Out Warning ..... 3-51
- Hot Coolant Temperature Warning ..... 3-45
- Low Brake Fluid Warning ..... 3-50
- Low Engine Oil Level ..... 3-46
- Low Fuel Warning ..... 3-50
- Low Oil Pressure ..... 3-46
- Low Tire ..... 3-47
- Low Washer Fluid Warning ..... 3-49
- Security ..... 3-49
- Service Traction System Warning ..... 3-44
- Service Vehicle Soon ..... 3-51
- Traction Active ..... 3-44
- Trunk Ajar Warning ..... 3-48

Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/ Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) – Customer Assistance ..... 7-5
Mirrors
- Automatic Dimming Rearview ..... 2-32
- Automatic Dimming Rearview with OnStar® ..... 2-32
- Manual Rearview Mirror ..... 2-31
- Manual Rearview Mirror with OnStar® ..... 2-31
- Outside Convex Mirror ..... 2-34
- Outside Heated Mirrors ..... 2-34
- Outside Power Mirrors ..... 2-33

MyGMLink.com ..... 7-4




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## N

New Vehicle Break-In ..... 2-17
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts ..... 6-13

## O

Odometer ..... 3-32
Off-Road Recovery ..... 4-14
Oil
  Engine ..... 5-18
  Pressure Indicator Light ..... 3-41
  Pressure Message ..... 3-46
  Supercharger, Engine ..... 5-24
OIL LIFE (GM Oil Life System Reset) ..... 2-43
Older Children, Restraints ..... 1-29
Online Owner Center ..... 7-4
OnStar® Personal Calling ..... 2-35
OnStar® Services ..... 2-35
OnStar® System ..... 2-34
OnStar® Virtual Advisor ..... 2-35
ORIG. SET (Return to the Original Settings) ..... 2-49
Other Warning Devices ..... 3-6
Outlet Adjustment ..... 3-26
Outside
  Convex Mirror ..... 2-34
  Heated Mirrors ..... 2-34
  Power Mirrors ..... 2-33
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode ... 5-34
Overseas – Customer Assistance ..... 7-5
Owner Checks and Services ..... 6-9
Owners, Canadian ..... ii
Owner's Information ..... 7-14

## P

Parade Dimming ..... 3-18
Park (P)
  Shifting Out of ..... 2-28
Parking
  Brake ..... 2-25
  Over Things That Burn ..... 2-28
Parking on Hills ..... 4-44
Park(P)
  Shifting Into ..... 2-26
Passenger Compartment Air Filter ..... 3-27
Passing ..... 4-14, 4-42
Passlock® ..... 2-16
Plan Ahead When Possible ..... 7-8
Playing a Cassette Tape ..... 3-64, 3-86
Playing a CD ..... 3-75, 3-89
Playing the Radio ..... 3-57, 3-68, 3-79
Power
  Accessory Outlets ..... 3-19
  Door Locks ..... 2-9
  Electrical System ..... 5-103



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power (cont.)
Six-Way Seats ..... 1-3
Steering Fluid ..... 5-47
Windows ..... 2-14
Power Steering ..... 4-12
Programmable Automatic Door Locks ..... 2-9
Programmable Modes ..... 2-9
Programming Mode ..... 2-42
Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter ..... 2-36

## Q

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts ..... 1-15

## R

Radiator Pressure Cap ..... 5-34
Radio Data System (RDS) ..... 3-56, 3-67, 3-78
Radio Messages ..... 3-61, 3-72, 3-83
Radios ..... 3-55
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player ..... 3-93
Care of Your CD Player ..... 3-95
Care of Your CDs ..... 3-94
Radio with Cassette ..... 3-56
Radio with Cassette and CD ..... 3-78
Radio with CD ..... 3-67
Setting the Time ..... 3-55
Theft-Deterrent ..... 3-91
Radios (cont.)
Understanding Reception ..... 3-93
RDS Messages ..... 3-60, 3-71, 3-82
Reading Lamps ..... 3-18
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides ..... 1-26
Rear Seat Passenger Positions ..... 1-23
Rear Seat Passengers, Safety Belts ..... 1-23
Rear Storage Area ..... 2-40
Rear Window Defogger ..... 3-25
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming ..... 2-32
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with OnStar® ..... 2-32
Rearview Mirror with OnStar® ..... 2-31
Rearview Mirrors ..... 2-31
Reclining Seatbacks ..... 1-4
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 6-12
Recreational Vehicle Towing ..... 4-31
Remote Keyless Entry System ..... 2-3
Remote Keyless Entry System, Operation ..... 2-4
Remote Trunk Release ..... 2-11
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire ..... 5-86
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools ..... 5-83
Removing the Wheel Covers and the Wheel Nut Caps ..... 5-85
Replacement Bulbs ..... 5-63
Replacing Brake System Parts ..... 5-53
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash ..... 1-58



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government ..... 7-12
General Motors ..... 7-12
United States Government ..... 7-12
Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button ..... 2-39
Resetting Defaults ..... 2-39
Resetting the Trip Computer ..... 3-54
Restraint System Check
Checking Your Restraint Systems ..... 1-57
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash ..... 1-58
Restraint Systems
Checking ..... 1-57
Replacing Parts ..... 1-58
Resynchronization ..... 2-7
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) ..... 2-18
Right Front Passenger Position, Safety Belts ..... 1-23
Roadside
Assistance Program ..... 7-6
Rocking Your Vehicle To Get It Out ..... 4-31
Routing, Engine Drive Belt ..... 6-14
Running Your Engine While You Are Parked ..... 2-30

# S

Safety Belt
Reminder Light ..... 3-33
Safety Belts
Care of ..... 5-97
Driver Position ..... 1-16
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly ..... 1-15
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts ..... 1-15
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults ..... 1-26
Rear Seat Passengers ..... 1-23
Right Front Passenger Position ..... 1-23
Safety Belt Extender ..... 1-28
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy ..... 1-22
Safety Belts Are for Everyone ..... 1-10
Safety Chains ..... 4-41
Safety Warnings and Symbols ..... iii
Scheduled Maintenance ..... 6-4
Seatback Latches ..... 1-6



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats
Easy Entry Seat ..... 1-7
Head Restraints ..... 1-6
Heated Seats ..... 1-4
Manual ..... 1-2
Manual Lumbar ..... 1-3
Reclining Seatbacks ..... 1-4
Seatback Latches ..... 1-6
Six-Way Power Seats ..... 1-3
Split Folding Rear Seat ..... 1-8
Securing a Child Restraint
Designed for the LATCH System ..... 1-42
Rear Seat Position ..... 1-43
Right Front Seat Position ..... 1-45
Selecting Outside Air or Recirculation ..... 3-22
Selecting the Fan Speed ..... 3-22
Service ..... 5-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-4
Doing Your Own Work ..... 5-3
Engine Soon Light ..... 3-39
Message ..... 3-49
Publications Ordering Information ..... 7-13
Traction System Warning Message ..... 3-44
Vehicle Soon Message ..... 3-51
Service Bulletins ..... 7-13
Service Manuals ..... 7-13
Setting Preset Stations ..... 3-58, 3-69, 3-80
Setting the Time ..... 3-55
Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble) ..... 3-59, 3-70, 3-81
SETTINGS (Display Current Settings) ..... 2-43
Sheet Metal Damage ..... 5-99
Shifting Into Park (P) ..... 2-26
Shifting Out of Park (P) ..... 2-28
Skidding ..... 4-16
Some Other Rainy Weather Tips ..... 4-20
Special Fabric Cleaning Problems ..... 5-95
Specifications, Capacities ..... 5-110
Speedometer ..... 3-32
Split Folding Rear Seat ..... 1-8
Starting Your 3400 V6 Engine ..... 2-18
Starting Your 3800 Series II V6 Engine ..... 2-19
Starting Your Engine ..... 2-18
Steering ..... 4-12
Steering in Emergencies ..... 4-13
Steering Tips ..... 4-12
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio ..... 3-92
Storage Areas
Center Console Storage Area ..... 2-40
Convenience Net ..... 2-40
Glove Box ..... 2-40
Rear Storage Area ..... 2-40
Storing the Flat Tire and Tools ..... 5-91
Storing the Spare Tire and Tools ..... 5-92
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow ..... 4-30
Sun Visors ..... 2-14
Sunroof ..... 2-41



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# T


Tachometer ..... 3-33
Taillamps
  Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Sidemarker
    Lamps ..... 5-62
TCS Warning Light ..... 3-37
Theft-Deterrent, Radio ..... 3-91
Theft-Deterrent Systems ..... 2-15
  Content Theft-Deterrent ..... 2-15
  Passlock® ..... 2-16
Tilt Wheel ..... 3-7
Tire
  Low Message ..... 3-47
Tire Inflation Check ..... 6-9
Tire Sidewall Labeling ..... 5-66
Tire Size ..... 5-69
Tire Terminology and Definitions ..... 5-70
Tires ..... 5-65
  Buying New Tires ..... 5-76
  Chains ..... 5-80
  Changing a Flat Tire ..... 5-82
  Compact Spare Tire ..... 5-93
  If a Tire Goes Flat ..... 5-81
  Inflation - Tire Pressure ..... 5-72
  Inspection and Rotation ..... 5-75
  Pressure Monitor System ..... 5-73
  Uniform Tire Quality Grading ..... 5-77
Tires (cont.)
  Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance ..... 5-79
  Wheel Replacement ..... 5-79
  When It Is Time for New Tires ..... 5-76
TIRE MON (Tire Inflation Monitor Reset) ..... 2-43
To Use the Engine Coolant Heater ..... 2-20
Top Strap ..... 1-38
Top Strap Anchor Location ..... 1-40
Torque Lock ..... 2-27
Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires ..... 4-41
Towing
  Recreational Vehicle ..... 4-31
  Towing a Trailer ..... 4-38
  Your Vehicle ..... 4-31
Traction
  Active Message ..... 3-44
  Control System (TCS) ..... 4-10
  Control System Warning Light ..... 3-37
  Service Traction System Warning Message ..... 3-44
Trailer Brakes ..... 4-41
Transaxle
  Fluid, Automatic ..... 5-28
Transaxle Operation, Automatic ..... 2-21
Transmission, Transaxle, Transfer Case Unit
  Repair Manual ..... 7-13
Transmitter Verification ..... 2-5
Transportation Options ..... 7-9




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip Computer ..... 3-54
Trip Odometer ..... 3-32
TRNKJAMB (Trunk Jamb) ..... 2-48
Trunk ..... 2-10
Trunk Ajar Warning Message ..... 3-48
Trunk Assist Handle ..... 2-11
Trunk Lock ..... 2-11
Turn and Lane-Change Signals ..... 3-8
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever ..... 3-7
Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer ..... 4-43

## U

Underhood Fuse Block (Lower) ..... 5-109
Underhood Fuse Block (Upper) ..... 5-108
Understanding Radio Reception ..... 3-93
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ..... 5-77
United States – Customer Assistance ..... 7-5
Used Replacement Wheels ..... 5-80
Using Cleaner on Fabric ..... 5-95
Using HomeLink® ..... 2-38

## V

Vehicle
  Control ..... 4-6
  Customization Settings ..... 3-96
  Damage Warnings ..... iv
  Loading ..... 4-33
  Service Soon Message ..... 3-51
  Symbols ..... iv
Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Records .... 7-10
Vehicle Identification
  Number (VIN) ..... 5-102
  Service Parts Identification Label ..... 5-102
Vehicle Personalization ..... 2-42
Vehicle Storage ..... 5-53
Visor Vanity Mirrors ..... 2-14
Visors ..... 2-14
Voltmeter Gage ..... 3-35



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## W


Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators ..... 3-28
Warnings
  Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 3-6
  Other Warning Devices ..... 3-6
  Safety and Symbols ..... iii
  Vehicle Damage ..... iv
Washer Fluid Low Warning Message ..... 3-49
Washing Your Vehicle ..... 5-97
Weight of the Trailer ..... 4-40
Weight of the Trailer Tongue ..... 4-40
What Kind of Engine Oil to Use ..... 5-20
What Kind of Oil to Use ..... 5-25
What to Do with Used Oil ..... 5-24
What to Use ..... 5-32, 5-48
Wheels
  Alignment and Tire Balance ..... 5-79
  Replacement ..... 5-79
When to Add Engine Oil ..... 5-19
When to Change Engine Oil
  (GM Oil Life System) ..... 5-22
When to Check ..... 5-24, 5-72
When to Check and Change ..... 5-28
When to Check Power Steering Fluid ..... 5-47
When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 5-26
When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking
  on a Hill ..... 4-44
Where to Put the Restraint ..... 1-38
Why Safety Belts Work ..... 1-12
Windows ..... 2-13
  Power ..... 2-14
Windshield Washer ..... 3-10
  Fluid ..... 5-48
Windshield Wiper
  Blade Replacement ..... 5-64
  Fuses ..... 5-103
Windshield Wipers ..... 3-9
Winter Driving ..... 4-26


## X


XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ..... 3-96
XM™ Satellite Radio Service
  (48 Contiguous US States) ... 3-56, 3-67, 3-78, 3-93


## Y


Your Vehicle and the Environment ..... 6-2




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine